



# Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment | 2023

***Guidelines for  
ATC classification  
and DDD assignment  
2023***

ISSN 1726-4898

ISBN 978-82-8406-343-0

Suggested citation: WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology, Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment 2023. Oslo, Norway, 2022

© Copyright

WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology, Oslo, Norway.

Use of all or parts of the material requires reference to the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. Copying and distribution for commercial purposes is not allowed. Changing or manipulating the material is not allowed.

# **Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment**

**26th edition**

WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology  
Norwegian Institute of Public Health  
P.O.Box 222 Skøyen  
N-0213 Oslo  
Norway

Telephone: (47) 21078160  
E-mail: [whocc@fhi.no](mailto:whocc@fhi.no)  
Website: [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no)

Previous editions:

1990: Guidelines for ATC classification<sup>1)</sup>  
1991: Guidelines for DDD<sup>1)</sup>  
1993: Guidelines for ATC classification  
1993: Guidelines for DDD  
1996: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
1998: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2000: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2001: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2002: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2003: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2004: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2005: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2006: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2007: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2008: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2009: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2010: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2011: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2012: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2013: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2014: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2015: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2016: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2017: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2018: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2019: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2020: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2021: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment  
2022: Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment

1) A co-publication between the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology and the Nordic Council on Medicines

## PREFACE

The Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical (ATC) classification system and the Defined Daily Dose (DDD) as a measuring unit are recommended by the WHO for drug utilization monitoring and research. The system is widely used internationally and the number of users is increasing. The purpose of preparing guidelines is to make information about the ATC/DDD system available to the users.

The members of the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology have given expert advice and comments on the work with these guidelines.

**This edition of the *Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment* is based on the ATC classification index with DDDs valid from January 2023.**

The guidelines consist of a general part including information about the procedures and data requirements for ATC/DDD assignment and alterations. The second part of the publication, the interpretative guidelines, describes the different ATC levels down to the 4th level. These guidelines should be consulted whenever the ATC/DDD system is used for drug utilization monitoring and research. They describe particular issues, which have been discussed and resolved by consensus of the Working Group.

The Guidelines and the ATC index with DDDs are updated annually. Both publications can be ordered as electronic or paper copies (English or Spanish versions) from the Centre (order form, see website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no)). A pdf document of the Guidelines and a searchable version of the ATC/DDD index linked to the text from the Guidelines are available on the website (ATC/DDD index).

We hope this book will prove helpful to the users of the ATC/DDD system. Suggested improvements can be addressed to the WHO Collaborating Centre in Oslo.

Oslo, December 2022

WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology  
Norwegian Institute of Public Health

## **Staff of the Centre**

Gry Vibeke Bakken, MScPharm, PhD

Hege Salvesen Blix, MScPharm, PhD

Live Storehagen Dansie, MScPharm, MPhil Int Comm Health

Ignatios Ioakeim Skoufa, MD

Irene Litleskare, MScPharm

Mohammad Nouri Sharikabad, MScPharm, PhD

Kristine Olsen, MScPharm

Tove Granum, secretary

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>I.</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>10</b>
A.	History of the ATC/DDD system .....	10
B.	Present Organizational responsibility for the ATC/DDD system ....	10
1.	WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology ...	10
2.	WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology.....	11
C.	The purpose of the ATC/DDD system .....	14
<b>II.</b>	<b>The anatomical therapeutic chemical (ATC) classification system.....</b>	<b>14</b>
A.	Structure and nomenclature .....	14
B.	Inclusion and exclusion criteria .....	15
C.	Principles for classification .....	16
1.	Therapeutic use or pharmacological class .....	16
2.	Only one ATC code for each route of administration .....	17
3.	More than one ATC code for a medicinal substance.....	17
4.	New ATC groups and “other” groups (X groups).....	18
5.	Other general principles .....	18
D.	Classification of combination products .....	19
E.	Principles for changing ATC codes.....	21
F.	The EphMRA classification system .....	22
<b>III.</b>	<b>DDD (Defined Daily Dose).....</b>	<b>23</b>
A.	Definition and general considerations.....	23
B.	Principles for DDD assignment .....	23
1.	General principles.....	23
2.	Combination products .....	25
3.	Other factors .....	27
a)	Fixed doses.....	27
b)	Depot formulations .....	27
c)	Intermittent dosing .....	27
d)	Duration of treatment.....	27
4.	Selection of units.....	28



C.	Pediatric DDD.....	29
D.	Principles for reviewing and changing DDD.....	29
E.	Description of other drug utilization metrics.....	31
<b>IV.</b>	<b>Uses of the ATC/DDD methodology.....</b>	<b>32</b>
A.	Implementation and maintenance of the ATC/DDD methodology	32
B.	Drug utilization.....	33
1.	Data sources.....	34
2.	DDD indicators and interpretations.....	35
C.	Drug Safety Assessment.....	37
D.	Drug information.....	38
E.	Drug costs, pricing, reimbursement and cost-containment.....	38
F.	Pharmaceutical marketing purposes.....	39
<b>V.</b>	<b>Procedures and data requirements for ATC/DDD assignment and alterations.....</b>	<b>40</b>
A.	Requests for ATC classification.....	40
1.	Procedures and timing.....	40
2.	Data requirements for submission.....	42
B.	Requests for ATC changes.....	43
1.	Procedures and timing.....	43
2.	Data requirements for submission.....	44
C.	Requests for DDD assignment.....	44
1.	Procedures and timing.....	44
2.	Data requirements for submission.....	46
D.	Requests for DDD changes.....	46
1.	Procedures and timing.....	46
2.	Data requirements for submission.....	46
<b>VI.</b>	<b>Description of ATC index with DDDs.....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>VII.</b>	<b>Other ATC classification systems.....</b>	<b>48</b>
A.	ATCvet classification.....	48
B.	ATC herbal classification.....	48
<b>VIII.</b>	<b>ATC/DDD Interpretative guidelines.....</b>	<b>49</b>

<b>ATC system main groups</b> .....	<b>50</b>
A Alimentary tract and metabolism.....	51
B Blood and blood forming organs.....	81
C Cardiovascular system .....	91
D Dermatologicals .....	113
G Genito urinary system and sex hormones.....	129
H Systemic hormonal preparations, excl. sex hormones and insulins.....	142
J Antiinfectives for systemic use.....	149
L Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents.....	166
M Musculo-skeletal system.....	176
N Nervous system .....	185
P Antiparasitic products, insecticides and repellents .....	205
R Respiratory system .....	212
S Sensory organs.....	225
V Various.....	234
List of terms .....	248

## **I. INTRODUCTION**

### **A. History of the ATC/DDD system**

The field of Drug Utilization Research (DUR) began attracting attention in the 1960's. This followed the publication of a breakthrough study on drug consumption from 1966-1967 (pioneered by the WHO Regional Office for Europe) which further exemplified the importance and applicability of DUR (ref: *Engel A, Siderius P. The consumption of drugs. Report on a study, 1966-1967. WHO Regional Office for Europe, Copenhagen 1968 (EURO 3101)*). In addition, the WHO symposium in 1969 highlighted the need for an internationally accepted classification system for drug utilization studies. As a result the Drug Utilization Research Group (DURG) was established and entrusted with the development of internationally applicable methods for DUR. Inspired by this interest, the Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical (ATC) classification was developed in Norway as a modification and extension of the European Pharmaceutical Market Research Association (EphMRA) classification system.

In order to measure drug use, it is important to have both a classification system and a unit of measurement. To deal with the objections against traditional units of measurement, a technical unit of measurement called the Defined Daily Dose (DDD) was developed for use in drug utilization studies.

Several decades of experience using ATC/DDD methodology have demonstrated its suitability in drug utilization monitoring and research. The increase in number of users indicates the usefulness of the system.

### **B. Present Organizational responsibility for the ATC/DDD system**

#### **1. WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology**

Access to standardised and validated information on drug use is essential to allow audit of patterns of drug utilization, identification of problems, educational or other interventions and monitoring of the outcomes of the interventions. In 1981, the ATC/DDD system was recommended by the WHO as the international standard for drug utilization studies, and in 1982 the *WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology* was established and given the responsibility for coordinating the development and use of the ATC/DDD system. In 1996, the Centre was recognized as a global centre. This was seen as important to allow close integration of international drug utilization studies and WHO's initiatives to

achieve universal access to needed drugs and rational use of drugs particularly in developing countries. Access to standardised and validated information on drug use is essential to allow audit of patterns of drug utilization, identification of problems, educational or other interventions and monitoring of the outcomes of the interventions.

The Centre is located at the Norwegian Institute of Public Health and is funded by the Norwegian Government. The first agreement was drawn up by WHO Headquarters with the Government of Norway in 1996. The latest redesignation of the Department of Drug Statistics, Norwegian Institute of Public Health as WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology, was in 2020. All activities related to ATC/DDD classification are conducted in accordance with the policies determined by WHO.

The Terms of References (TOR) and activities are described in detail in the redesignation documents of the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. According to the TORs, the Centre has under the guidance of WHO the following activities:

- Assignment of new ATC codes and DDDs based on requests from users in different countries
- Review and revise existing ATC codes and DDDs based on proposals from users of the ATC/DDD system
- Handle requests and guide users regarding the use and misuse of the ATC/DDD system
- To provide specialized training on the use of the ATC/DDD methodology to provide technical support to countries in setting up their national medicines classification

## **2. WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology**

In 1996, when the decision to globalise the ATC/DDD system was taken, the WHO Division of Drug Management and Policies established *the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology*. The International Working Group includes 12 expert members selected by WHO Headquarters to represent a wide range of geographical and professional backgrounds, including clinical pharmacology, clinical medicine, international public health, drug utilization and drug regulation. All six WHO regions are represented in the group. The WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology receives expert advice from the Working Group. The tasks of the Working Group are:

- To continue the scientific development of the ATC/DDD system.
- To discuss and approve all new ATC codes, DDD assignments and alterations to existing ATC codes and DDDs.
- To develop further the use of the ATC/DDD system as an international standard for drug utilization studies.
- To revise as necessary the guidelines for assignment and change of ATC codes and DDDs.
- To revise as necessary the procedures for applications for assignment of and changes to ATC codes and DDDs to ensure they are consistent and transparent.
- To assess the sources and availability of statistics on drug use internationally, and to encourage the systematic collection of comprehensive drug use statistics in all countries and regions using the ATC/DDD system as the international standard.
- To develop methods, manuals and guidelines for the practical application and appropriate use of the ATC/DDD system in drug utilization studies in a variety of settings, particularly those applicable to developing countries.
- To work with groups involved in rational drug use initiatives to integrate methods for measurement of drug use in assessing needs and outcomes of interventions with the aim of improving drug use.

The International Working Group meets twice annually. A teleconference may replace one of the two annual meetings. Members are required to complete a WHO declaration of interest form before the meeting. Observers from the WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring and the International Federation of Pharmaceutical Manufacturers Association are invited to attend the meetings of the International Working Group. An open session is arranged prior to one of the annual meetings to which any interested party can register (see further information below).

Decisions on ATC classification or DDD assignment from the meetings are published on the website of the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology and in the publication WHO Drug Information. Any decision on a new or revised ATC classification or DDD assignment is first published as temporary. Any interested party wishing to dispute this decision is invited to

comment within a specified deadline after its publication. If there are no objections to a temporary decision, it will be published as a final decision and implemented in the next issue of the ATC classification index with DDDs. In case of any objection, the decision will be reconsidered at the next meeting of the International Working Group. If a new decision is made at the second meeting, this decision will be published as temporary and will be open to comments similar to the first decision. WHO has the final responsibility for the decisions and any dispute arising in the course of this work must be referred to WHO for final resolution.

### *Open Session*

An open session is arranged once a year in connection with the meeting of the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology. It is organised in the interest of transparency and consists of a 90 minutes session prior to the closed decision-making session of the meeting of the Working Group.

Anyone with a legitimate interest in the Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical (ATC) classification system and Defined Daily Dose (DDD) assignment can attend the open session. This includes regulatory authorities, the pharmaceutical industry, academia and non-governmental organisations, and it provides an opportunity to present additional information to the experts to assist them in their decisionmaking. It is also an opportunity for the international experts of the Working Group to exchange ideas and opinions with interested parties.

The open session is not intended to be used as a mechanism to challenge the decision of the Working Group. The procedures for applying for and commenting on an ATC classification or a DDD assignment are outlined in these *Guidelines* (see section V).

Interested parties are requested to register for the open session at the WHO Headquarters at least 14 days in advance of the meeting and are requested to provide a relevant reason for attending. WHO Headquarters will restrict the time allowed for each presentation in order to keep the duration of the open session within 90 minutes. Information on these meetings are made available on the WHO website at [www.who.int/medicines](http://www.who.int/medicines).

## C. The purpose of the ATC/DDD system

The purpose of the ATC/DDD system is to serve as a tool for drug utilization monitoring and research in order to improve the quality of drug use. One component of this is the presentation and comparison of drug consumption statistics at international and other levels.

A major aim of the Centre and Working Group is to maintain stable ATC codes and DDDs over time to allow trends in drug consumption to be studied without the complication of frequent changes to the system. There is a strong reluctance to make changes to classifications or DDDs where such changes are requested for reasons not directly related to drug consumption studies. For this reason the ATC/DDD system by itself is not suitable for guiding decisions about reimbursement, pricing and therapeutic substitution.

It is essential that a tool for drug utilization monitoring and research is able to cover most medicines available on the market. An important aim of drug utilization is to monitor rational as well as irrational drug use as an important step in improving the quality of drug use. ***The classification of a substance in the ATC/DDD system is therefore not a recommendation for use and it does not imply any judgements about efficacy or relative efficacy of drugs and groups of drugs.***

## II. THE ANATOMICAL THERAPEUTIC CHEMICAL (ATC) CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

### A. Structure and nomenclature

#### Structure

In the ATC classification system, the active substances are classified in a hierarchy with five different levels. The system has fourteen main anatomical/pharmacological groups or 1st levels. Each ATC main group is divided into 2nd levels which could be either pharmacological or therapeutic groups. The 3rd and 4th levels are chemical, pharmacological or therapeutic subgroups and the 5th level is the chemical substance. The 2nd, 3rd and 4th levels are often used to identify pharmacological subgroups when that is considered more appropriate than therapeutic or chemical subgroups.

The complete classification of metformin illustrates the structure of the code:

A	Alimentary tract and metabolism (1st level, anatomical main group)
A10	Drugs used in diabetes (2nd level, therapeutic subgroup)
A10B	Blood glucose lowering drugs, excl. insulins (3rd level, pharmacological subgroup)
A10BA	Biguanides (4th level, chemical subgroup)
A10BA02	metformin (5th level, chemical substance)

Thus, in the ATC system all plain metformin preparations are given the code A10BA02.

### **Nomenclature**

- International nonproprietary names (INN) are preferred. If INN names are not assigned, USAN (United States Adopted Name) or BAN (British Approved Name) names are usually chosen. For herbal medicinal products, Latin names are used.

### **B. Inclusion and exclusion criteria**

The WHO Collaborating Centre in Oslo establishes new entries in the ATC classification on *requests* from the users of the system. These include manufacturers, regulatory agencies and researchers. The coverage of the system is not comprehensive. A major reason why a substance is not included is that no request has been received.

Substances which fulfil one of the following criteria will normally be included in the ATC system:

- new chemical entities or biologicals proposed for licensing. A new chemical entity is normally not included in the ATC system before an application for marketing authorisation is ready for submission in at least one country.
- existing well defined chemical entities with an approved marketing



authorization in one or more countries. An INN should preferably be established for the substance. Alternatively other official names, e.g. USAN or BAN names should be available.

- herbal medicinal products assessed and approved by regulatory authorities based on dossiers including efficacy, safety, and quality data (e.g. the well-established use procedure in the EU).
- cell/gene therapy products with an INN, USAN, BAN or another official name.

Other medicinal products are considered on a case by case basis. Preparations with bacterial lysates as the active substance are classified according to indication in relevant ATC 4th levels. Complementary, homeopathic and herbal traditional medicinal products are in general not included in the ATC system.

## **C. Principles for classification**

### **1. Therapeutic use or pharmacological class**

Medicinal products are classified according to the main therapeutic use of the main active ingredient. The ATC system is, however, not strictly a therapeutic classification system. In many ATC main groups, pharmacological groups have been assigned on the 2nd, 3rd and 4th levels allowing drugs with several therapeutic uses to be included without specifying the main indication. For example, calcium channel blockers are classified in the pharmacological group C08 *Calcium channel blockers*, which avoids specifying whether the main indication is coronary heart disease or hypertension. Subdivision on the mechanism of action will, however, often be rather broad (e.g. antidepressants), since a too detailed classification according to mode of action often will result in having one substance per subgroup which as far as possible is avoided. Some ATC groups are subdivided in both chemical and pharmacological groups (e.g. ATC group J05A - *Direct acting antivirals*). Preference will be given to establishing a new pharmacological 4th level rather than a chemical subgroup.

Many medicines are used and approved for two or more indications, while normally only one ATC code will be assigned. Besides, ATC codes are often assigned according to the mechanism of action rather than therapy. An ATC group may therefore include medicines with many different indications, and drugs with similar therapeutic use may be classified in different groups.

## **2. Only one ATC code for each route of administration**

Medicinal substances are classified according to the main therapeutic use or pharmacological class on the basic principle of *only one ATC code* for each route of administration (e.g. oral formulations with similar ingredients and strength will have the same ATC code). This is an important principle for ATC classification as it allows aggregation of data in drug utilization monitoring and research without counting a pharmaceutical product more than once. This principle is strictly handled by the WHO Collaborating Centre so that users in different countries shall be able to classify a pharmaceutical product (defined by active ingredient/s, route of administration and strength) in the same way.

A pharmaceutical product may be approved for two or more equally important indications, and the main therapeutic use may differ from one country to another. This will often give several classification alternatives. Such drugs are only given one code, the main indication being decided on the basis of the available information. Problems are discussed in the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology where the final classification is decided.

Cross-references will be given in the guidelines to indicate the various uses of such drugs.

## **3. More than one ATC code for a medicinal substance**

A medicinal substance can be given more than one ATC code if it is available in two or more strengths or routes of administration with clearly different therapeutic uses.

Example of different strengths:

- Finasteride is available in two different strengths. A low strength tablet for the treatment of male pattern baldness is classified under D11AX - *Other dermatologicals*. A high strength tablet used in the treatment of benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH) is classified under G04C - *Drugs used in BPH*.

Example of different administration forms:

- Prednisolone in single ingredient products is given several ATC codes due to different therapeutic use and different formulations.

A07EA01	Intestinal antiinflammatory agents	(mainly enemas and foams)
C05AA04	Antihemorrhoidals for topical use	(suppositories)
D07AA03	Dermatological preparations	(creams, ointments and lotions)
H02AB06	Corticosteroids for systemic use	(tablets, injections)
R01AD02	Nasal decongestants	(nasal sprays/drops)
S01BA04	Ophthalmologicals	(eye drops)
S02BA03	Otologicals	(ear drops)

#### 4. New ATC groups and “other” groups (X groups)

A new medicinal substance not clearly belonging to any existing ATC 4th level will as a main rule be placed in an X group ("other" group) in the relevant 3rd level. To avoid a situation of several 4th levels with only one single substance in each, new specific 4th levels are as a general rule only established when at least two substances with marketing authorisations fit in the group. In addition, a new 4th level should be regarded a benefit for drug utilization research. New and innovative pharmaceutical products will therefore often be classified in an X group and such groups could be established for only one single substance.

#### 5. Other general principles

Immediate and slow release tablets will normally have the same ATC code.

Different stereoisomeric forms will normally have separate ATC codes. Exceptions will be described in the guidelines for the respective ATC groups

Prodrugs are usually assigned separate ATC codes if the dosages used are different and/or the nonproprietary name (INN) of the prodrug and the active drugs are different.

Example:

J01CA08 *pivmecillinam*

J01CA11 *mecillinam*

Obsolete drugs or drugs withdrawn from the market are kept in the ATC system, since exclusion of substances from the ATC system may create difficulties for the users of the system when considering historical data.

## D. Classification of combination products

Pharmaceutical products containing two or more active ingredients are regarded as combinations (incl. combination packages) and given different ATC codes from plain products containing one active ingredient. Stereoisomeric mixtures are regarded as plain products. Medicinal products which in addition to one active ingredient contain auxiliary substances intended to increase the stability of the product (e.g. vaccines containing small amounts of antibacterials), increase the duration (e.g. depot formulations) and/or increase the absorption (e.g. different solvents in various dermatologicals) are considered as plain products.

The classification of combination products is a challenge in any classification system. As for plain products, combinations are in general classified according to their main therapeutic use or pharmacological class. A medicinal product containing an analgesic and a tranquillizer, and used primarily to ease pain, should be classified as an analgesic. Likewise, combinations of analgesics and antispasmodics will be classified in A03 - *Drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders* if the antispasmodic effect of the product is considered the most important. Similar examples are described in detail in the guidelines for the relevant drug groups.

In some ATC groups a ranking is introduced to help in the classification of combination products (e.g. combinations of different antihypertensives and combinations of different analgesics). This ranking shows which drug takes precedence over others when the classification is decided. This is detailed in the guidelines for the relevant drug groups.

A commonly used principle for combinations with active ingredients not belonging to the same ATC 4th level, is that the main ingredient in the combination is identified and the combination is given a separate 5th level code (50-series) in the same 4th level as the main ingredient is classified.

Example:

N02BE01 *paracetamol*

N02BE51 *paracetamol, combinations excl. psycholeptics*

In this example different combination products share the same main active ingredient (paracetamol in the example above) and are given the same ATC code. Combinations of e.g. paracetamol + acetylsalicylic acid and paracetamol + caffeine are thus classified in the same code N02BE51 *paracetamol, combinations excl psycholeptics*.

The names of all active ingredients of a combination are given in some ATC 5th levels. This principle has been used more frequently in recent years in order to give a better identification of the various combinations.

Example:

M01AE02 *naproxen*

M01AE52 *naproxen and esomeprazole*

M01AE56 *naproxen and misoprostol*

Some combination products containing psycholeptic drugs, which are not classified under N05 - *Psycholeptics* or N06 - *Psychoanaleptics*, are classified at separate 5th levels using the 70-series, e.g. N02BE71 *paracetamol, combinations with psycholeptics*.

Most of the ATC 70-series codes were established many years ago, and the products included in these codes may be obsolete today.

Combinations containing two or more active ingredients belonging to the same 4th level are in some cases classified using the 5th level code 30 (or 20). Further explanation is given in the relevant chapters of the guidelines. Only a few new codes have been established according to this principle in recent years. Further explanation is given in the relevant chapters of the guidelines.

Example:

B01AC06 *acetylsalicylic acid*

B01AC07 *dipyridamole*

B01AC30 *combinations* (e.g. acetylsalicylic acid and dipyridamole)

An important principle used more frequently in recent years as more rational combinations have been marketed, is to assign separate ATC 3rd or 4th levels for combinations.

Examples:

C10B *Lipid modifying agents, combinations*

J05AR *Antivirals for treatment of HIV infections, combinations*

N02AJ *Opioids in combination with non-opioid analgesics*

R03AL *Adrenergics in combination with anticholinergics incl triple combinations with corticosteroids*

In these ATC groups for combinations, the ATC 5th level code often specify the active ingredients (e.g. C10BX04 *simvastatin, acetylsalicylic acid and ramipril*).

How specific and “visible” a combination appears in the ATC classification, will to some extent depend on the need for a detailed classification from a drug utilization point of view.

There are some exceptions to these main principles and these are explained in the guidelines.

## **E. Principles for changing ATC codes**

As the selection of drugs and their uses are continually changing and expanding, regular revisions of the ATC system will always be necessary.

*Changes in the ATC classification should be kept to a minimum.* An important aim is to keep a stable classification system over time with as few changes as possible and still have a classification where new therapy and new pharmacological principles find an appropriate place. Before alterations are made, any potential difficulties for the use of the ATC system in drug utilization monitoring and research are considered and related to the benefits that could be achieved by the alteration.

Alterations in ATC classification can be made when the main use of a drug has clearly changed, and when new groups are required to accommodate new substances or to achieve better specificity in the groupings. Other reasons for changes can be new knowledge about mechanism of action or the need for splitting large and complex groups.

When it is decided to make an alteration, the following principles are used:

- When new therapeutic or pharmacological ATC groups are assigned, it should always be considered if there are substances in other groups that should be included in the new group.
- When changing ATC codes for plain products, it should always be considered if it is necessary to change the ATC code for any combination products with the same active ingredient.
- When an ATC code is changed for a substance, the previous code is not reused for new substances.

When an ATC code is altered, the DDD is also reviewed. For example, when the classification of chloroquine was changed from ATC group M to P (i.e. classified only as an antimalarial), the DDD was changed since the dosages used for

treatment of malaria are different from the dosages used for rheumatic disorders.

A cumulative overview of all ATC alterations back to 2005 is available on the website of the WHO Centre.

## **F. The EphMRA classification system**

The ATC classification system was originally based on the same main principles as the Anatomical Classification developed by the European Pharmaceutical Market Research Association (EphMRA) and the Pharmaceutical Business Intelligence and Research Group (PBIRG). In this classification, drugs are classified in a hierarchy of three and sometimes four levels mainly according to their indications and use. Many of these quite similar to the ATC structure, but in many groups, less detailed. There are no specific codes for the active ingredient (5th level in the ATC). Contrary to the ATC classification, EphMRA classifies *medicinal products*. It is possible to find products with the same active ingredient, route of administration and strength in several classes. Despite a similar structure at the higher levels, the ATC classification and the EphMRA classification have developed individually for many years.

Since 1991 there has been an annual consultation between the EphMRA classification committee and the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology to discuss classification problems and to harmonize when possible. The purposes of the two systems differ as the primary objective of the EphMRA classification is to satisfy the marketing needs of pharmaceutical companies. A complete harmonization is therefore neither feasible nor an aim. An important aim of the annual meeting is therefore to describe the differences (i.e. show the differences by giving bridges) and similarities in groups where harmonization is not achieved. The harmonization process was initiated in order to minimise the confusion of having two very similar classification systems.

There are many differences between the EphMRA classification and the ATC classification. This means that data prepared using the ATC classification cannot be directly compared with data prepared using the EphMRA system. Awareness of the differences between the two systems is then particularly important. In some settings, and on the EphMRA website, the system is referred to as the ATC classification and this has caused confusion among users over the years.

The EphMRA classification system is used worldwide by IQVIA (IMS Health/Quintiles) in producing marketing research statistics for the

pharmaceutical industry. An annually updated comparison booklet of the two systems is available.

### III. DDD (DEFINED DAILY DOSE)

#### A. Definition and general considerations

The basic **definition** of the unit is:

*The DDD is the assumed average maintenance dose per day for a drug used for its main indication in adults.*

The DDD is a unit of measurement and does not necessarily reflect the recommended or Prescribed Daily Dose (see page 32). Therapeutic doses for individual patients and patient groups will often differ from the DDD as they will be based on individual characteristics (such as age, weight, ethnic differences, type and severity of disease) and pharmacokinetic considerations.

Only *one* DDD is assigned per ATC code and route of administration (e.g. oral formulation). The DDD is nearly always a **compromise** based on a review of available information including doses used in various countries when this information is available. The DDD is sometimes a “dose” that is rarely if ever prescribed, because it might be an average of two or more commonly used doses.

Drug utilization data presented in DDDs only give a rough estimate of consumption and not an exact picture of actual use. DDDs provide a fixed unit of measurement independent of price, currencies, package size and strength enabling the researcher to assess trends in drug consumption and to perform comparisons between population groups.

DDDs are not established for topical products, sera, vaccines, antineoplastic agents, allergen extracts, general and local anesthetics and contrast media.

#### B. Principles for DDD assignment

##### 1. General principles

DDDs are only assigned to drugs with an ATC code and a DDD will normally not be assigned for a substance before a product is approved and marketed in at least one country.



The basic principle is to assign only one DDD per route of administration within an ATC code.

DDDs for single substances are normally based on monotherapy. Exceptions to this rule are given in the guidelines of the relevant ATC groups.

For substances indicated for rare disorders with highly individual dosing schedules, the Working Group could decide not to assign a DDD.

DDDs for herbal medicinal products are not included in the ATC index. They are published in an ATC sorted list on the website ([www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no)).

When a new DDD is assigned, various sources are used to get the best overview of the actual or expected use of a substance. The assigned DDD is based on the following principles:

- The average adult dose recommended for the main indication as reflected by the ATC code. When the recommended dose refers to body weight, an adult is considered to be a person of 70 kg. It should be emphasised that even special pharmaceutical forms mainly intended for children (e.g. mixtures, suppositories) are assigned the DDD used for adults. Exceptions are made for some products only used by children, e.g. growth hormones and fluoride tablets.
- The recommended maintenance dose (long term therapeutic dose) is usually preferred when establishing the DDD. The initial dose may differ from the maintenance dose but this is not reflected in the DDD. If the approved dose recommendation provides limited information about the maintenance dose, the DDD will usually be the average of the maintenance dose range. Examples of interpretation of approved dose titration recommendations:
  - "Titrate up to a high dose if it is tolerated": the high dose would normally be chosen as the DDD.
  - "Consider to increase the dose only if efficacy is not satisfactory with initial dose": the DDD would normally be based on the initial dose.
- For some groups of medicinal products specific principles for DDD assignment are established (e.g. the DDDs for the selective serotonin agonists in the treatment of migraine are based on the approved initial dose). These principles are given in the guidelines for the relevant ATC groups.

- The treatment dose is generally used. If, however, prophylaxis is the main indication, this dose is used, e.g. for fluoride tablets (A01AA01) and some antimalarials.
- A DDD is usually established according to the declared content (strength) of the product. Various salts of a substance are usually not given different DDDs. Exceptions are described in the guidelines for the relevant ATC groups. For example, the DDDs for antimalarials are expressed as the base.
- Different stereoisomeric forms are normally assigned separate DDDs and ATC codes. The DDDs for stereoisomeric forms are described in the respective ATC groups.
- Prodrugs, which have not been given a separate ATC code, are normally not given a separate DDD.
- The DDD is often identical for various dosage forms of the same drug. Different DDDs can be established when the bioavailability is substantially different for various routes of administration (e.g. oral and parenteral administration of morphine) or if the dosage forms are used for different indications. When the use of parenteral formulations represents only a minor fraction of the total use for a specific indication, these products have normally not received a separate DDD even if the bioavailability of the oral form is substantially different. This principle has not been strictly followed in recent years. Parenteral antibacterials are for example mainly used in hospitals and often for more severe infections than in primary care. The DDDs are frequently used as indicators for antibacterial use in hospitals, and it has been decided that assigning different DDDs for oral and parenteral formulations could be important in some cases to improve the usefulness of the methodology in drug utilization monitoring and research.
- Parenteral products with different routes of administration (e.g. i.v. and i.m.) have the same DDD.

## **2. Combination products**

The DDDs assigned for combination products are based on the main principle of counting the combination as one daily dose, regardless of the number of active ingredients included in the combination. If a treatment schedule for a patient includes e.g. two single ingredient products, then the consumption will be measured by counting the DDDs of each single ingredient product separately. If,

however, a treatment schedule includes a combination product containing two active ingredients, then the calculated consumption measured in DDDs will normally be lower since the DDD for the combination will be counted.

Example I:

Treatment with two products, each containing one active ingredient:

Product A: Tablets containing 20 mg of substance X (DDD = 20 mg)

Product B: Tablets containing 25 mg of substance Y (DDD = 25 mg)

The dosing schedule 1 tablet of A plus 1 tablet of B daily will be calculated as a consumption of 2 DDDs.

Example II:

Treatment with a combination product containing two active ingredients:

Product C: Tablets containing 20 mg of substance X and 12.5 mg of substance Y.

The DDD of the combination products is assigned as 1 UD = 1 tablet.

The dosing schedule 1 tablet of C daily will be calculated as 1 DDD (even though it will be equivalent to 1.5 DDD of the single active ingredients).

The following principles for assigning DDDs to combination products apply:

1. For combination products (other than the combination products used in hypertension, see point 2 below) where the ATC code identifies the main ingredient (i.e. for the 50- and 70-series combinations and for some 4th level combinations), the DDD for the combination product should be equal to the DDD for the main active ingredient.
2. For combination products used for the treatment of hypertension (e.g. ATC group C02, C03, C07, C08 and C09), DDDs are based on the average number of dosing intervals per day. This means that: 1 tablet is the DDD for combinations given once daily, whereas 2 tablets is the DDD for combinations given twice daily and 3 tablets is the DDD for combinations given three times daily etc. This principle means that the assigned DDDs may differ from the DDD assigned for the single active ingredient (according to the ATC code).

For all combination products where the DDD assigned deviates from the principles given above, a list of DDDs is available from the Centre (published on the website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no)).

### **3. Other factors**

#### **a) Fixed doses**

For some groups of products, e.g. cough mixtures in ATC group R05 and multivitamins in ATC group A11, the composition of various products may differ, but the average recommended dose is usually the same. Such DDDs are called "fixed dose".

In some ATC groups, it has been decided to use fixed DDDs for all combination products given in e.g. number of tablets regardless of strength. These rules are clearly stated in the chapters for the respective ATC groups in this publication (e.g. ATC group A02AD, A02BD and A02BX).

For eye drops used in glaucoma therapy (S01E), a fixed dose regardless of strength has been established in the different subgroups. This is based on the assumption that only one drop is applied in each eye per dose given, regardless of strength.

When fixed doses are assigned, these will be further described in the guidelines for the relevant ATC groups.

#### **b) Depot formulations**

Depot formulations (e.g. sustained release formulations) are usually assigned the same DDDs as the ordinary dosage forms. The very few exceptions to this main rule are described in the guidelines for the different ATC groups.

#### **c) Intermittent dosing**

In certain therapeutic groups, e.g. hormones, many of the products are administered intermittently. In such cases, the dose administered is divided by the number of days in the treatment period to obtain the average daily dose. This means that medicament free periods in between courses are included in the treatment period. This applies to e.g. depot antipsychotics (N05A) and contraceptive pills (G03A), which are given intermittently.

#### **d) Duration of treatment**

The duration of treatment is normally not considered when assigning a DDD, even if the drugs are used mainly in short periods. Exceptions from this main rule are explained in the respective ATC groups.

#### 4. Selection of units

For plain products, DDDs are as far as possible given in the amount of active ingredients, using the following units: g (gram), mg (milligram), mcg (microgram), ml (millilitre), mmol (millimole), U (unit), TU (thousand units) and MU (million units). The abbreviation U for unit is used for international as well as other units.

For combination products or products where a DDD for various reasons cannot be given in the amount of active ingredient, the unit UD (unit dose) is used:

- Tablets, suppositories, pessaries, etc:  
1 UD equals 1 tablet, 1 suppository, 1 pessary etc.
- Powder for oral use:  
1 UD equals 1 gram of powder. If the DDD for an oral powder is given in grams, this refers to the content of active ingredient.
- Powder in single dose units for oral use:  
1 UD equals 1 unit dose powder.
- Powder for injection:  
1 UD equals 1 gram of powder. If the DDD for powder for injection is given in grams, this refers to the content of active ingredient.
- Powder for inhalation:  
1 UD equals 1 unit dose powder, e.g. 1 capsule.
- Liquid preparations for oral use (mixtures, syrups etc.):  
1 UD equals 5 ml of the preparation.
- Liquid preparations for parenteral use (injections):  
1 UD equals 1 ml of the preparation.
- Liquid preparations for rectal use:  
1 UD equals 1 ml of the preparation.
- Liquid preparations for inhalation:  
1 UD equals 1 ml of the preparation.
- Liquid preparations for inhalation in single dose units (unit dose):  
1 UD equals 1 unit dose inhal.sol

- Enemas:  
1 UD equals 1 enema.
- Plaster for transdermal application:  
1 UD equals 1 plaster.
- Vaginal cream:  
1 UD equals 1 dose, 1 application.

For combination packages consisting of two or more plain products, the UD concept is used when assigning DDDs also for these combinations. 1 UD will still refer to 1 unit dose in the package, and if a combination package contains, e.g. 4 tablets with different ingredients to be taken once daily, the DDD assigned will be 4 UD.

### **C. Pediatric DDD**

DDD's are normally assigned based on use in adults (see page 23).

For medicinal products approved for use in children, the dose recommendations will differ based on age and body weight. Many medicinal products used in children are not even approved for such use, and documentation regarding dose regimens is not available.

Thus the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology has concluded that pediatric DDD's are challenging to assign and problems related to drug utilization research in children cannot be solved by such means.

Estimating the prevalence of drug use in children is not possible by using crude sales data presented in DDD's. Prescribed daily dosages and indications in a pediatric population should be used if available and compared with the DDD values. If the pediatric subgroup is difficult to identify, the general DDD should be used as a measuring tool for overall comparisons.

### **D. Principles for reviewing and changing DDD**

DDD's sometimes need to be reviewed because dosages may change over time, e.g. due to the introduction of new main indications or new research. The International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology may review a DDD whenever the Group finds it appropriate.

A major aim of the Collaborating Centre and Working Group is to maintain stable ATC codes and DDDs over time. This allows trends in drug utilization to be studied without the complication of frequent changes. Changes in DDDs are to be kept to a minimum and avoided as far as possible, as too many alterations are disadvantageous for long-term studies on drug utilization. Before alterations are made, difficulties arising for the users are weighed against the benefits achieved by the alteration.

- The same principles used to assign new DDDs also apply when DDDs are reviewed.
- Changes are generally not made unless they are at least in the order of 50%. This rule is not used for the three year revision of DDDs, where smaller alterations are allowed. Further, minor alterations are sometimes accepted for important drugs, which are frequently used.

### **DDD review after three years**

All newly assigned DDDs are reviewed during the third year after inclusion in the *ATC Index with DDDs*. The DDDs are reviewed at the first semi-annual meeting of the International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology. The following are considered:

- Recommended dosages as listed in drug catalogues in different countries and/or published in peer reviewed scientific journals or major international textbooks.
- Data on prescribed daily doses (PDDs) from a range of countries if available. Figures showing the prescribed daily dose (PDD) can be useful when reviewing an assigned DDD. Usually more data concerning PDDs are available after a three years period than at the time of marketing.
- Established main indication and therapy profile of the preparation (i.e. has the main indication changed?)
- Existing DDDs in the ATC group.
- Written input from users to the DDD.

When reviewing combination products, changes in the DDDs for the different active ingredients are an important consideration.

### **Further reviews of DDDs**

After the first three-year period, the DDD normally remains unchanged for at least five years unless the WHO Working Group decides to make a total revision of all DDDs assigned in an ATC group. Proposed DDD changes from users of the system, based on new information will always be considered, but only after the three years revision has been performed.

## **E. Description of other drug utilization metrics**

### **Cost**

Drug use can be expressed in terms of costs (e.g. national currency). Cost figures are suitable for an overall cost analysis of drug expenditure. National and international comparisons based on cost parameters are often misleading and of limited value in the evaluation of drug use. Price differences between alternative preparations and different national cost levels make the evaluation difficult. Long-term studies are also difficult due to fluctuations in currency and changes in prices.

When cost data are used, an increase in the use of cheaper drugs may have little influence on the total level, while a shift to more expensive drugs is more readily noticed.

### **Volume**

Common physical units (e.g. grams, kilos, litres), numbers of packages or tablets and numbers of prescriptions are also used for quantifying drug consumption. These units can be applied only when the use of one drug or well defined products is evaluated. Problems arise, however, when the consumption of whole drug groups is considered.

If consumption is given in terms of grams of active ingredients, drugs with low potency will have a larger fraction of the total than drugs with high potency. Combined products may also contain different amounts of active ingredients from plain products, which will not be reflected in the figures.

Counting the numbers of tablets also has disadvantages, because the strengths of tablets vary, with the result that low strength preparations contribute relatively more than high strength preparations. Also, short-acting preparations will often contribute more than long-acting preparations.



The number of prescriptions does not give a good expression of total use unless the total amounts of drugs per prescription are also considered. However, counting prescriptions is of great value in measuring the frequency of prescriptions and evaluating the clinical use of drugs (e.g. diagnosis and dosages used).

### **Prescribed daily dose**

The prescribed daily dose (PDD) is defined as ***the average dose prescribed according to a representative sample of prescriptions***. The PDD can be determined from prescription studies, medical- or pharmacy records and patient interviews. It is important to relate the PDD to the diagnosis on which the dosage is based. The PDD will give the average daily amount of a drug that is actually prescribed. When there is a substantial discrepancy between the PDD and the defined daily dose (DDD), it is important to take this into consideration when evaluating and interpreting drug consumption figures.

For drugs where the recommended dosage differs from one indication to another (e.g. the antipsychotics) it is important that diagnosis is linked to the prescribed daily dose given. Pharmacoepidemiological information (e.g. sex, age and mono/combined therapy) is also important in order to interpret a PDD. The PDD can vary according to both the illness treated and national therapy traditions. For anti-infectives, for instance, PDDs vary according to the severity of the infection. There can also be substantial differences between PDDs in various countries. PDDs in Asian populations are often lower than in Caucasian populations.

The fact that PDDs may differ from one country to another should always be considered when making international comparisons.

## **IV. USES OF THE ATC/DDD METHODOLOGY**

### **A Implementation and maintenance of the ATC/DDD methodology**

When the decision to introduce and use the ATC/DDD methodology is taken, it is essential to realize that its proper use inevitably includes an important and time-consuming first step: Each pharmaceutical product has to be linked to the appropriate ATC code and DDD. For monitoring and comparing drug use internationally it is important to ensure that the data retrieved are comparable, in other words that the ATC groups from different countries, regions or health facilities do have the expected content. In order to achieve this, it is of vital

importance that the officially correct ATC code is assigned to each pharmaceutical product package. If possible, this work should be done on a national basis to secure consistent use of the methodology within a country. Many countries have established systems of unique identifiers for pharmaceutical products at the package level. The number of DDDs per package should be calculated for each product package and this information should be added to the pharmaceutical products registry. The national medicines list and ATC/DDDs should be linked at the level of the unique product identifier.

It is recommended to have a common structure for these pharmaceutical product registries. National registries should as a minimum include the following variables:

- Unique identifier (registration number)
- Medicinal product name (brand name/trademark)
- Pharmaceutical form
- Strength
- Pack size
- ATC code
- Active ingredient(s)
- DDD
- Route of administration
- Number of DDDs in the pack

Good procedures for updating national or other registries with new ATC codes/DDDs and alterations should be established. It is recommended that the responsibility for quality assurance and validation of national registries is allocated to a national body in each country. This work should be performed by competent persons with good knowledge of the ATC/DDD methodology.

An updated version of the *ATC/DDD Index* is issued in January each year. To be able to compare drug utilization data from different countries and time periods, it is essential to know which ATC codes and DDDs are used. A minimum number of changes in the ATC codes and DDDs are made annually. Thus, it is important to give proper references to the ATC/DDD version used when presenting drug consumption figures.

## **B. Drug utilization**

The main purpose of the ATC/DDD system is as a tool for presenting drug utilization statistics with the aim of improving drug use. This is the purpose for which the system was developed and it is with this purpose in mind that all

decisions about ATC/DDD classification are made. Consequently, using the system for other purposes can be inappropriate.

Use of the ATC/DDD system allows the standardisation of drug groups and represents a stable drug utilization metric to enable comparisons of drug use between countries, regions, and other healthcare settings, and to examine trends in drug use over time and in different settings.

Collecting and publishing drug utilization statistics are critical elements in the process of improving the prescribing and dispensing of medicines. For drug utilization statistics to have the best possible impact on drug use, the statistics need to be used in a focused and active manner.

Examples of ways in which drug utilization statistics based on ATC and DDDs have been and can be used to improve drug use include the following:

- National publications, which provide clinicians, pharmacists and others with a profile of drug consumption in the country (with or without comparisons between countries or between areas within the country).
- Publications providing feedback within health services to individual health facilities, groups of health care providers, or individual health providers.
- Use of drug utilization statistics by national health systems, universities, drug information centres, and others to identify possible over use, underuse or misuse of individual drugs or therapeutic groups. Depending on the situation, this information can then be used to initiate specific studies or specific educational interventions. Educational interventions may include articles in drug bulletins, articles in scientific journals, letters to clinicians, etc.

## **1. Data sources**

The ATC/DDD system can be used for the collection of drug utilization statistics in a variety of settings and from a variety of sources:

Examples are:

- Sales data such as wholesale data at a national, regional or local level.
- Dispensing data either comprehensive or sampled. Computerised pharmacies can easily collect data on drugs dispensed. Alternatively, sample data can be collected manually. Reimbursement systems, which operate in a number of

countries at the national level provide comprehensive dispensing data down to the individual prescription level, as all prescriptions are submitted and recorded for reimbursement. This is generally called “claims” data. Similar data are often available through health insurance or health maintenance organisations.

- These databases can sometimes allow collection of demographic information on the patients, and information on dose, duration of treatment and co-prescribing. Linkage to hospital and medical databases can provide information on indications, and outcomes such as hospitalisation, use of specific medical services, and adverse drug reactions.
- Patient encounter based data. This is usually collected by specially designed sampling studies such as those carried out by market research organisations. However, increasing use of information technology at the medical practice level are making such data more available. These methods have the advantage of potentially providing accurate information on Prescribed Daily Doses, patient demographics, duration of therapy, co-prescribing, indications, morbidity and co-morbidity, and sometimes outcomes.
- Patient survey data. Collection of data at the patient level can provide information about actual drug consumption and takes into account compliance in filling prescriptions and taking medications as prescribed. It can also provide qualitative information about perceptions, beliefs, and attitudes to the use of medicines.
- Health Facility data. Data on medication use at all the above levels is often available in health care settings such as hospitals and health centres at regional, district, or village level.

## **2. DDD indicators and interpretations**

Drug utilization figures expressed in DDDs are generally reported in units that control for population size differences. This provides a measure of exposure or therapeutic intensity in a defined population, allowing comparisons across various time periods and population groups.

Drug Utilization figures should ideally be presented using a relevant denominator for the health context such as numbers of DDDs per 1000 inhabitants per day, DDD per inhabitant per year, or as DDDs per 100 bed days.

- *DDD per 1000 inhabitants per day*: Sales or prescription data presented in DDDs per 1000 inhabitants per day may provide a rough estimate of the proportion of the study population treated daily with a particular drug or group of drugs. The figure 10 DDDs per 1000 inhabitants per day can be interpreted as follows: in a representative group of 1000 inhabitants, 10 DDDs of the drug are utilized on average, on any given day of the year analysed. Alternatively this can be expressed as 10/1000 (1%) of the population are receiving this drug each day in that year. This estimate is most useful for drugs used chronically and when there is good agreement between the average prescribed daily dose (PDD) and the DDD.
- *DDD per 100 bed days*: The DDDs per 100 bed days may be applied when drug use by inpatients is considered. The definition of a bed day may differ between hospitals or countries. A common definition is: *A bed day is a day during which a person is confined to a bed and in which the patient stays overnight in a hospital.* Day cases (patients admitted for a medical procedure or surgery in the morning and released before the evening) are sometimes included as one bed day and sometimes excluded. The same definition of bed days should always be chosen when performing comparative studies. The figure 70 DDDs per 100 bed days of hypnotics provides an estimate of the therapeutic intensity and estimates that 70% of the inpatients receive one DDD of a hypnotic every day. This measure is applied in analyses of in-hospital drug use. This indicator is quite useful for benchmarking in and between hospitals.
- *DDD/patient*: This indicator is often calculated in pharmacoepidemiological databases and expresses the treatment intensity/total exposure according to a defined study period. If the actual dose used is equivalent to the DDD, the DDD/patient would also express number of treatment days in a specific period.
- *DDDs per inhabitant per year*: This indicator is often considered useful to present the figures for anti-infectives (or other drugs normally used in short periods). It will give an estimate of the number of days for which each inhabitant is, on average, treated annually. For example, 5 DDDs/inhabitant/year indicates that the consumption is equivalent to treatment of every inhabitant with a 5 days course during a certain year. Alternatively, if the standard treatment period is known, the total number of DDDs can be calculated as the number of treatment courses, and the number of treatment courses can then be related to the total population.

Drug utilization data presented in DDDs give a rough estimate of consumption and not an exact picture of the actual drug use, and the *estimates described above are only true if there is good agreement between the actually prescribed dose and the DDD.*

For some drug groups where DDDs have not been established, alternative ways of presenting data are recommended. For example, consumption of antineoplastic agents in ATC group L01 can be presented in grams of the active ingredient.

When there is a known discrepancy between the prescribed daily dose (PDD) and the DDD, it is important to take this into account when interpreting drug consumption figures. Caution should also be taken in situations where the recommended dosage differs from one indication to another (e.g. antipsychotics), in severe versus mild disease (e.g. antibiotics) and where PDDs may differ from one population to another (e.g., according to sex, age, ethnicity or geographic location).

Since alterations of ATC and DDDs do occur it is important to be aware of which version of the ATC index is used in drug consumption studies especially when comparing the data over time and when making international comparisons.

When presenting trends in drug consumption over time, the data for the whole period (e.g. all years) should always be updated (recalculated) by using the most recent version of the ATC index.

## **C. Drug Safety Assessment**

The [WHO Programme for International Drug Monitoring \(PIDM\)](#): The WHO PIDM aims to enhance patient care and patient safety in relation to the use of medicines; and support public health programmes by providing reliable and balanced information for the effective assessment of the risk-benefit profile of medicines.

One of the main aims of the WHO PIDM is to identify the earliest possible adverse drug reaction signals. The programme has more than 120 countries contributing to the WHO global database of Individual Case Safety Reports (ICSRs) called [VigiBase®](#). VigiBase® is maintained and developed on behalf of the WHO by [the WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring \(Uppsala Monitoring Centre\)](#). VigiBase® uses the WHO Drug Dictionary which consists of the ATC classification and is useful for drug safety assessment. *Please note that many*

*unofficial ATC codes are used in the WHO Dictionary, but these are clearly marked.* The ATC classification allows aggregation of statistics and analysis in reporting of adverse drug reactions.

In pharmacovigilance analyses using VigiBase® or other databases, disproportionality analysis is an acknowledged tool to support signal detection. Disproportionality metrics, e.g. the proportional reporting ratio (PRR), can be calculated based on the ATC classification. When PRR is applied at the level of ATC codes, the reporting rate of one specific event is calculated for a given ATC code and compared to the reporting rate of the event in all ICSRs of the database except those that contain one or more drugs from the ATC code of interest.

#### **D. Drug information**

ATC codes are included in pharmaceutical product information (e.g. Summary of Product Characteristics) approved by EMA, the regulatory medicinal agency in the EU.

ATC codes are included in some international drug textbooks (e.g. the Martindale) and several national drug catalogues. ATC codes are also included in the WHO Essential Drug List.

#### **E. Drug costs, pricing, reimbursement and cost-containment**

Basing detailed reimbursement, therapeutic group reference pricing and other specific pricing decisions on the ATC and DDD assignments is a misuse of the system. This is because the ATC and DDD assignments are designed solely to maintain a stable system of drug consumption measurement, which can be used to follow and compare trends in the utilization of drugs within and across therapeutic groups. None the less, drug utilization data have a central role in the quality of care cycle and ATC and DDD methodologies can be helpful in following and comparing trends in cost, but need to be used with caution.

The DDD is a technical drug use metric. DDDs do not necessarily reflect therapeutically equivalent doses of different drugs and therefore cannot be assumed to represent daily doses that produce similar treatment outcomes for all products within an ATC category. Such estimates of therapeutic equivalence are very difficult to establish, particularly to the precision usually required for pricing decisions. DDDs, if used with caution can be used to compare, for example, the costs of two formulations of the same drug. However, it is usually not valid to use

this metric to compare the costs of different drugs or drug groups. The relationships between therapeutically equivalent doses, the actual prescribed daily dose (PDD) and DDD usually differ between drugs and, for the same drug, between countries.

Moreover, even though PDDs commonly change over time altering a DDD complicates drug utilization research, hence there is a reluctance to alter a DDD. Alterations are not made unless there is evidence that changes in PDD are large, or there is some particular reason such as a change in the main indication. For these reasons, DDDs are not suitable for comparing drugs for specific, detailed pricing, reimbursement and cost-containment decisions.

Similarly, basing reimbursement and pricing comparisons on the inclusion of drugs in ATC groups is not recommended. The main indications for drugs (on which ATC assignments are based) often differ widely between countries and, like the PDD, can change over time. However, the ATC classifications can be useful when costs need to be aggregated into drug groups or therapeutic areas to determine, for example, to what extent increased costs can be attributed to increased use of a therapeutic group over time.

Increasingly, however, national authorities are using the system for drug pricing, reimbursement and cost containment decisions. This is a scientifically unjustified and inappropriate use of the system for which the national authority must take full responsibility. As a consequence, when disputes arise, the concerned parties involved need to approach the national regulatory authority rather than those responsible for the maintenance of the ATC/DDD classification system on an international level.

## **F. Pharmaceutical marketing purposes**

It is important to emphasise that the ATC classification does not necessarily reflect the recommended therapeutic use in all respects. Therefore, the ATC system should not be used as a tool for promoting medicines concerning efficacy, mechanism of action or therapeutic profile in relation to other drugs.

It should be emphasised that assignment to different ATC groups does not mean a difference in therapeutic effectiveness and assignment to the same ATC group does not indicate therapeutic equivalence.



Concerning the use of price comparisons for marketing purposes, see point E above.

## **V. PROCEDURES AND DATA REQUIREMENTS FOR ATC/DDD ASSIGNMENT AND ALTERATIONS**

### **A. Requests for ATC classification**

#### **1. Procedures and timing**

All new entries in the ATC classification system are assigned on request from the users. Requests for ATC classification of a medicinal substance should be addressed to the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. The application form for assignment of new ATC codes and DDDs is available on our website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no). Electronic applications are preferred. Application for ATC/DDD is free of charge. The official language of the Centre is English. Requests and documentation should accordingly be submitted in English.

If a substance marketed in a country is not included in the latest version of the annually updated ATC classification index, a request for an ATC code may in principle be sent from any user of the system (e.g. health authorities, manufacturers, researchers and other users). It will usually be the manufacturer who has best access to the information required for an application. The manufacturer will usually wish to know about and be involved in an application for an ATC classification and/or DDD assignment for one of their products, particularly if it is a new drug.

A new chemical entity is normally not included in the ATC system before an application for marketing authorisation is ready for submission in at least one country. In some cases, it may be necessary to await a classification until the new medicinal product has been approved in at least one country (especially for chemical entities where it is considered difficult to establish a new 5th level). These conditions are set to avoid including in the ATC system too many chemical entities which never reach the market.

It is left to the national users of the ATC system to classify combination products based on the principles given in these guidelines. The guidelines are prepared in order to facilitate this work and to ensure that different users of the ATC system classify in a consistent way. If the content of these guidelines is not sufficient to decide a classification of a specific combination, or if it is necessary to establish a

new ATC entry, such problems should be addressed to the WHO Centre in Oslo. The Centre also provides regular training courses to assist those working with the system at a national level.

The WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology formally approves all new ATC codes. The group has two annual meetings, normally in March and October.

The steps in the approval procedure for new ATC codes are normally as follows:

- A standard letter confirming receipt of the request is returned from the Centre to the applicant.
- If the new code is easy to assign, a preliminary ATC code assigned by the Centre is returned to the applicant within 6-8 weeks, informing them that the ATC code still has to be formally approved by the Working Group at the next meeting.
- For substances with more than one alternative classification and for substances which are difficult to classify into existing classifications, the requests are discussed in the Working Group before assignment of a temporary ATC code. The applicant receives this information within 6-8 weeks after receipt of the request. After approval of the minutes of the Working Group meetings, the decision of the temporary ATC code is sent from the Centre to the applicant.
- After approval of the minutes of the Working Group meeting the new ATC codes approved at the meeting are published on the website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the next issue of the publication *WHO Drug Information*. A deadline will then be allowed for interested parties to comment or object to the decisions.
- If objections, justified on evidence submitted, are received, the ATC classification will be discussed again at the following meeting of the Working Group. If the decision is kept, then the decision is considered final after this meeting. If a new decision is taken by the Working Group, notification of this new ATC is published at our website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the next issue of the publication *WHO Drug Information*. A deadline is then allowed for any interested parties to comment or object to the decision.
- If no objections are received, the new ATC code is considered final and included in the next issue of the ATC classification index. A new code can be used when it is considered final. A list of new final ATC codes is also published

semi-annually on the website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the *WHO Drug Information*.

*In order to include requests for new ATC codes on the agenda for the Working Group meetings, they should normally be forwarded to the Centre before 15 January (March meeting) and before 15 August (October meeting).*

ATC codes approved at the March meeting (e.g. March 2023) will be included in the ATC index the following year (i.e. January 2024). ATC codes approved at the October meeting of the Working Group (e.g. October 2023) will appear in the ATC index the year after the following year (i.e. January 2025).

## **2. Data requirements for submission**

The following data should be submitted when requesting an ATC code for a substance:

- Chemical structure and relationship to similar drugs
- Pharmacology and mechanism of action and relationships to similar drugs
- Main indication as shown in the product information in major countries where it is licensed or submitted for licensing
- Other indications which are licensed or for which licensing is proposed in the future
- Proposed ATC classification with justification based on the evidence submitted
- Status concerning marketing authorisation
- Information about therapeutic use, if available

Useful sources of these data would be approved product information documents from regulatory authorities or proposed product information documents stating that these are not yet approved. Summaries of submissions to, or evaluations from, major regulatory agencies relating to the above are useful, as well as market research data showing the percentage use for the main indications

## **B. Requests for ATC changes**

### **1. Procedures and timing**

Any user may in principle propose changes to ATC classifications. There is no application form for ATC alterations. Proposals for changes should be sent to the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology, and all proposals will be discussed in the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology.

The steps in the evaluation procedure for changes to ATC classifications are as follows:

- The Centre will confirm receipt of the proposal for a change and give information about the time schedule for discussion at the Working Group meeting.
- After approval of the minutes of the Working Group meeting, the decision from the meeting concerning the proposed change is distributed from the Centre to those requesting the change (the applicant). Independent of whether it has been decided to change or not, a deadline will be allowed for the applicant to comment or object to this decision.
- If it is decided to make a change, notification of this change is published at our website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no) and in the next issue of the *WHO Drug Information*. A deadline is then allowed for interested parties to comment or object to the change.
- If objections, justified by submitted evidence, are received, the ATC alteration will be discussed again at the following meeting of the Working Group, and a final decision will then be taken.
- If no objections are received, the altered ATC classification will be implemented in the next issue of the ATC classification index.

*In order to include proposals for ATC alterations on the agenda for the Working Group meetings, they should be forwarded to the Centre before 15 January (March meeting) and before 15 August (October meeting).*

ATC alterations decided at the March meeting (e.g. March 2023) be included in the ATC index the following year (i.e. January 2024). ATC alterations decided at

the October meeting of the Working Group (e.g. October 2023) will be included in the ATC index the year after the following year (i.e. January 2025).

## **2. Data requirements for submission**

When requesting changes to ATC classifications, the data requirements are similar to the data required for new ATC codes. An important basis for the ATC/DDD system is to maintain a stable system for drug consumption studies. For this reason, there need to be compelling reasons for changing ATC codes. It is therefore important to submit data, which justify the proposed change.

If a change in the main therapeutic use is the reason for the proposed change, the data submitted should clearly indicate this change (e.g. market research data showing the percentage use for the different indications in a range of countries).

If new knowledge of pharmacology or mechanism of action is the reason for the proposed change, relevant evidence should be submitted.

If the proposed change is to establish specific ATC groups for one or more substances already classified in another group (usually a *various* group), it is necessary to submit data that verify that the change is beneficial and represents an improvement of the ATC classification for presenting drug consumption statistics. Justifications based on the use of the system in reimbursement, for pricing or marketing reasons will not be considered.

## **C. Requests for DDD assignment**

### **1. Procedures and timing**

New DDDs are assigned on request from the users. Requests for new DDDs should be addressed to the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. The application form for assignment of new ATC codes and DDDs is available on our website ([www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no)). Electronic applications are preferred and applications are free of charge. Any user may in principle propose a new DDD (e.g. health authorities, manufacturers, researchers and others). However, as with ATC code assignment, it is the manufacturer who will usually have the best access to the required information for new drugs.

A DDD will only be assigned for substances which have received an ATC code, or where the ATC code can be assigned in connection with the DDD. DDDs are not assigned before marketing is approved in at least one country.

All new DDDs are discussed and approved by the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology.

The steps in the approval procedure for new DDDs are very similar to the procedure for new ATC codes (see page 40):

- The Centre will confirm receipt of the request for a new DDD and give information to those requesting the DDD (the applicant) about the time schedule for discussion at the following Working Group meeting.
- After approval of the minutes of the Working Group meeting, the decision from the meeting concerning the DDD is distributed from the Centre to the applicant.
- The new DDDs are published on the website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the next issue of the WHO publication: *WHO Drug Information*. A deadline is then allowed for interested parties to comment or object to the new DDD.
- If objections, justified on submitted evidence, are received, the DDD will be discussed again at the following meeting of the Working Group. If the decision is kept, then the decision is considered final after this meeting. If a new decision is taken by the Working Group, notification of this new DDD is published at our website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the next issue of the publication *WHO Drug Information*. A deadline is then allowed for any interested part to comment or object to the decision.
- If no objections are received, the new DDD is considered final after the deadline, and included in the next issue of the ATC classification index. A list of final DDDs is also published semi-annually at our website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no) and in the *WHO Drug Information*.

*In order to include requests for new DDDs on the agenda for the Working Group meetings, they should be forwarded to the Centre before 15 January (March meeting) and before 15 August (October meeting).*

New DDDs decided at the March meeting (e.g. March 2023) will be included in the ATC index the following year (i.e. January 2024). New DDDs decided at the October meeting of the Working Group (e.g. October 2023) will be included in the ATC index the year after the following year (i.e. January 2025).

## **2. Data requirements for submission**

The following information is required when requesting a new DDD:

- Dose ranges and dosing instructions for each indication in the product information approved by one or more major regulatory authorities.
- Proposal for a DDD justified by the submitted information.
- Status concerning marketing authorisation.
- Doses used in clinical trials to support marketing if available.
- Market research data on doses used in practice in various countries if such data are available.
- Where the drug is to fit into an existing ATC classification, comparative dosing information should be provided if available. It is difficult to define therapeutically equivalent doses with the degree of precision often asked for, and the DDDs within therapeutic groups do not necessarily represent therapeutically equivalent doses.

## **D. Requests for DDD changes**

### **1. Procedures and timing**

Any user may in principle propose changes in DDDs. There is no application form for DDD changes. Proposal for changes should be sent to the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. All proposals will be discussed by the WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology.

The steps in the evaluation procedure for changes to DDDs are the same as the procedures for changes to ATC classifications (see page 43).

### **2. Data requirements for submission**

When requesting changes of DDDs, the data requirements are similar to the data required for new DDDs. An important basis for the ATC/DDD system is to maintain a stable system for drug consumption studies. Because of this, there need to be compelling reasons to change DDDs. Arguments for DDD changes might be:

- a change in the main indication so that the dose recommendation has been altered.
- a large change (in the order of 50%) in the average dose used (see also page 30). This would need to be supported by market research data in a range of countries. However, for the three year revision a smaller change can be accepted (see page 30).

Minor changes in DDD for use in reimbursement, for pricing or marketing purposes will not be considered.

## VI. DESCRIPTION OF ATC INDEX WITH DDDs

The WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology publishes an updated version of the complete **ATC index with DDDs** annually. The ATC index is available in paper copy and includes one list sorted according to ATC codes, with all the established ATC codes and DDDs for plain substances, and one list alphabetically sorted according to nonproprietary drug names, including all ATC 5th levels. The ATC index is also available in electronic format (Excel or XML). Order form is available on the website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

The DDDs which are to be reviewed during the year, are listed in Annex I in the ATC index.

A searchable version of the index is available on the website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no). The search options enable the user to find ATC codes and DDDs based on substance name or ATC levels. Text from the *Guidelines for ATC classification and DDD assignment* linked to the ATC level is also available. The text will give information related to the background for the ATC and DDD assignment.

A pdf document of the *Guidelines* is available on our website.

**Lists of the annual ATC/DDD alterations and new ATC/DDDs** are available in December each year on our website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no). The lists are distributed free of charge by email to the users of the ATC/DDD system included on the Centre's mailing list.

**Cumulative lists of ATC/DDD alterations** performed since 2005 are available on our website [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).



**List of DDDs for combined products** where the assigned DDD deviates from the general principles is available on our website [www.whoocc.no](http://www.whoocc.no).

## **VII. OTHER ATC CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS**

### **A. ATCvet classification**

The Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical classification for veterinary medicinal products, ATCvet, is based on the same main principles as the ATC system for medicines for human use. The ATCvet classification is kept as close to the human system as possible, but with special adaptations in order to make it suitable for veterinary medicines. The ATCvet classification was developed by the Nordic Council on Medicines, and was taken over by the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology in January 2001. Further information on the ATCvet classification can be found on our website [www.whoocc.no](http://www.whoocc.no).

### **B. ATC herbal classification**

The Herbal ATC (HATC) system provides a framework for the nomenclature and therapeutic classification of herbal substances and their combinations. The classification is structurally similar to the official ATC system. Herbal remedies in the Herbal ATC system are divided into groups according to their therapeutic use, and additional categories are introduced to the HATC for herbal-specific groups.

The herbal classification is not adopted by WHO. The Uppsala Monitoring Centre is responsible for the ATC herbal classification, and it is used in their WHO Drug Global Dictionary to facilitate capture, grouping and aggregation of herbal remedies data at different levels of specificity.

Further information about the Herbal ATC classification can be obtained from the Uppsala Monitoring Centre (WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring), <http://www.who-umc.org/>.

## VIII. ATC/DDD INTERPRETATIVE GUIDELINES

This book includes all ATC headings down to the 4th level.

The comments included vary from one ATC group to another. No comments are given if the establishment of ATC codes and DDDs is considered to cause no special problems.

Comments related to the assignment of DDDs are given in shadowed boxes.

The interpretative guidelines that follow should be consulted whenever the ATC/DDD system is used for drug utilization research. They describe particular issues that were discussed and resolved by consensus of the Working Group while establishing ATC/DDDs. If no special problems or issues arose during that process, no comments are given.

## **ATC SYSTEM MAIN GROUPS**

The main groups of the ATC classification system are listed below. A survey of each main group is given in the beginning of each of the following chapters.

- A Alimentary tract and metabolism
- B Blood and blood forming organs
- C Cardiovascular system
- D Dermatologicals
- G Genito urinary system and sex hormones
- H Systemic hormonal preparations, excl. sex hormones and insulins
- J Antiinfectives for systemic use
- L Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents
- M Musculo-skeletal system
- N Nervous system
- P Antiparasitic products, insecticides and repellents
- R Respiratory system
- S Sensory organs
- V Various

**A ALIMENTARY TRACT AND METABOLISM**

**A01 STOMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

A *Stomatological preparations*

**A02 DRUGS FOR ACID RELATED DISORDERS**

A *Antacids*

B *Drugs for peptic ulcer and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD)*

X *Other drugs for acid related disorders*

**A03 DRUGS FOR FUNCTIONAL GASTROINTESTINAL DISORDERS**

A *Drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders*

B *Belladonna and derivatives, plain*

C *Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics*

D *Antispasmodics in combination with analgesics*

E *Antispasmodics and anticholinergics in combination with other drugs*

F *Propulsives*

**A04 ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS**

A *Antiemetics and antinauseants*

**A05 BILE AND LIVER THERAPY**

A *Bile therapy*

B *Liver therapy, lipotropics*

C *Drugs for bile therapy and lipotropics in combination*

**A06 DRUGS FOR CONSTIPATION**

A *Drugs for constipation*

**A07 ANTIDIARRHEALS, INTESTINAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY/ ANTIINFECTIVE AGENTS**

A *Intestinal antiinfectives*

B *Intestinal adsorbents*

C *Electrolytes with carbohydrates*

D *Antipropulsives*

E *Intestinal antiinflammatory agents*

F *Antidiarrheal microorganisms*

X *Other antidiarrheals*

- A08**      **ANTI Obesity PREPARATIONS, EXCL. DIET PRODUCTS**  
A    *Antiobesity preparations, excl. diet products*
- A09**      **DIGESTIVES, INCL. ENZYMES**  
A    *Digestives, incl. enzymes*
- A10**      **DRUGS USED IN DIABETES**  
A    *Insulins and analogues*  
B    *Blood glucose lowering drugs, excl. insulins*  
X    *Other drugs used in diabetes*
- A11**      **VITAMINS**  
A    *Multivitamins, combinations*  
B    *Multivitamins, plain*  
C    *Vitamin A and D, incl. combinations of the two*  
D    *Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, plain and in combination with vitamin B<sub>6</sub> and B<sub>12</sub>*  
E    *Vitamin B-complex, incl. combinations*  
G    *Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), incl. combinations*  
H    *Other plain vitamin preparations*  
J    *Other vitamin products, combinations*
- A12**      **MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS**  
A    *Calcium*  
B    *Potassium*  
C    *Other mineral supplements*
- A13**      **TONICS**  
A    *Tonics*
- A14**      **ANABOLIC AGENTS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**  
A    *Anabolic steroids*  
B    *Other anabolic agents*
- A15**      **APPETITE STIMULANTS**
- A16**      **OTHER ALIMENTARY TRACT AND METABOLISM PRODUCTS**  
A    *Other alimentary tract and metabolism products*

## **A ALIMENTARY TRACT AND METABOLISM**

### **A01 STOMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

#### **A01A STOMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

This group comprises agents for treatment of conditions of mouth and teeth. Preparations mainly used in gingivitis, stomatitis etc. should be classified in this group.

Preparations for the treatment of throat infections, (lozenges for common cold conditions) or treatment of symptoms both in mouth and throat are classified in R02 - *Throat preparations*.

Preparations containing local anesthetics, see N01B - *Anesthetics, local*, and R02AD - *Anesthetics, local*.

#### **A01AA Caries prophylactic agents**

This group comprises all types of fluoride preparations (tablets, gargles, toothpastes, chewing-gum etc.).

Combinations of olaflur and dectafur are classified at the 5th level of olaflur - A01AA03. Combinations of sodium fluoride and sodium monofluorophosphate are classified in A01AA30.

Combinations of colecalciferol and sodium fluoride indicated for prophylaxis of rickets and caries are classified in A11CC.

For caries prophylactic agents in A01AA, the DDDs are based on use in children. DDDs are only established for tablets.

#### **A01AB Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment**

This group comprises all antiinfective and antiseptic agents for the treatment of stomatitis, gingivitis etc. Products used in common minor infections of mouth and throat are classified in R02, e.g. cetylpyridinium.

Combinations of tetracycline with anti-inflammatory agents are classified at the same 5th level as plain tetracycline (A01AB13).

Other antibiotics for local use, see D - *Dermatologicals*.

The DDD for amphotericin in this group refers to lozenges.

The DDD for minocycline is based on the amount of active substance used in one periodontal pocket in local treatment of periodontitis.

### **A01AC** *Corticosteroids for local oral treatment*

This group comprises corticosteroid preparations for the treatment of gingivitis, stomatitis etc., i.e. corticosteroid preparations for use in the oral cavity.

Combinations of corticosteroids and local anesthetics are classified here.

Other corticosteroids for local use, see D - *Dermatologicals*.

No DDDs have been established in this group. The dosage forms are mainly ointments and pastes.

### **A01AD** *Other agents for local oral treatment*

This group comprises e.g. various gargles and hemostatic agents used in dentistry.

Becaplermin in a kit for implantation indicated to treat periodontally related defects is classified here.

Other hemostatic agents, see B02BC - *Local hemostatics*.

E.g. combinations with local anesthetics for oral treatment are classified at the *various* level A01AD11.

See also N01B - *Anesthetics, local*.

## **A02** **DRUGS FOR ACID RELATED DISORDERS**

### **A02A** **ANTACIDS**

This group comprises plain antacid drugs, antacids in combination with antiflatulents and antacids in combination with other drugs.

Antacids in combination with liquorice root or linseed are classified in this group.

Plain antiflatulents, see A03AX - *Other drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders*.

The DDDs for antacids are based on treatment of hyperacidity and dyspepsia, not ulcer. One exception, however, is antacids in combination with antispasmodics in A02AG, where the DDDs are based on treatment of ulcer.

For ordinary salt combinations in A02AD, fixed doses are used instead of individual doses for every single preparation (10 tablets = 10 UD; 50 ml mixture = 10 UD).

**A02AA** *Magnesium compounds*

Magnesium carbonate used for treatment of mineral deficiency is classified here.

Combinations of different magnesium compounds are classified in A02AA10 - *combinations*.

**A02AB** *Aluminium compounds*

Combinations of different aluminium compounds are classified in A02AB10 - *combinations*.

**A02AC** *Calcium compounds*

Combinations of different calcium compounds are classified in A02AC10 - *combinations*.

**A02AD** *Combinations and complexes of aluminium, calcium and magnesium compounds*

Antacids with two or more of the substances in combination are classified here.

Ordinary salt combinations are classified at the same 5th level A02AD01 e.g. combinations of aluminium hydroxide, magnesium carbonate gel and attapulgit, while the various complexes with a layer structure are classified at separate 5th levels e.g. magaldrate and almagate.

**A02AF** *Antacids with antiflatulents*

**A02AG** *Antacids with antispasmodics*

Preparations containing a combination of antacids and antispasmodics are classified in this group if the main use is as an antacid. See also A03 - *Drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders*.

**A02AH** *Antacids with sodium bicarbonate*

No ATC 5th levels are assigned in this group.

All oral formulations containing sodium bicarbonate including products indicated for metabolic acidosis are classified in this group.

Parenteral formulations, see B05BB.

Preparations containing sodium bicarbonate to be used only in connection with double-contrast radiography are classified in V07AY.

**A02AX** *Antacids, other combinations*



**A02B DRUGS FOR PEPTIC ULCER AND GASTRO-OESOPHAGEAL REFLUX DISEASE (GORD)**

Peptic ulcer includes ulcers in the oesophagus, stomach or duodenum.

Combinations with H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists are classified in A02B.

See also A03 - *Drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders*.

Antacids in combination with liquorice root or linseed are classified in A02A - *Antacids*.

Combinations with NSAIDs are classified in M01A.

**A02BA *H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists***

Ranitidine bismuth citrate is classified here, whereas other bismuth salts are classified in A02BX.

The DDDs are based on treatment of peptic ulcers.

**A02BB *Prostaglandins***

Misoprostol low strength tablets (25 mcg) used for induction of labour are classified in G02AD06.

**A02BC *Proton pump inhibitors***

Proton pump inhibitors in combination with domperidone are classified here in 50-levels.

Potassium-competitive acid blockers e.g. vonoprazan are classified in this group.

The DDDs are based on treatment of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease.

**A02BD *Combinations for eradication of Helicobacter pylori***

This group comprises fixed combination packages.

The DDDs for combination packages in this group are given a fixed dose DDD, e.g. 6 tablets per day gives a DDD = 6 UD.

**A02BX *Other drugs for peptic ulcer and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD)***

Ranitidine bismuth citrate is classified in A02BA.

Alginic acid in combination with antacids (e.g. aluminium hydroxide, calcium carbonate) is given the code A02BX13.

The DDD for alginic acid in combination with antacids (A02BX13) is given in a fixed doses (10 tablets = 10 UD; 50 ml mixture = 10 UD).

#### A02X OTHER DRUGS FOR ACID RELATED DISORDERS

This group comprises preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

#### A03 DRUGS FOR FUNCTIONAL GASTROINTESTINAL DISORDERS

A major part of the preparations in this group are combined preparations. Preparations containing e.g. analgesics and antispasmodics could be classified either in this group or in N02 - *Analgesics*. Combinations of psycholeptics and antispasmodics could be classified in A03 or in N05 - *Psycholeptics* etc. The main indication for the use of the combination will, together with the relative effect of the active components, decide the classification. In the treatment of pain caused by spasms, the spasmolytic component must be judged as more important than the analgesic component. Accordingly, analgesic/antispasmodic combinations should be classified in A03 if the main effect of the preparation is the antispasmodic action.

Combined preparations are classified in:

A03C - *Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics*

A03D - *Antispasmodics in combination with analgesics*

A03E - *Antispasmodics and anticholinergics in combination with other drugs*

Antispasmodics, which are used specifically in the urogenital tractus, are classified in G04BD - *Drugs for urinary frequency and incontinence*.

The DDD for the substances is usually equal for different routes of administration (oral, parenteral or rectal) of the same compound and is based on the oral dose.

#### A03A DRUGS FOR FUNCTIONAL GASTROINTESTINAL DISORDERS

Drugs for constipation are classified in A06.

Semisynthetic derivatives such as butylscopolamine, are classified in A03B - *Belladonna and derivatives, plain*.

**A03AA** *Synthetic anticholinergics, esters with tertiary amino group*

**A03AB** *Synthetic anticholinergics, quaternary ammonium compounds*

Plain preparations for systemic use containing glycopyrronium bromide are classified in this group. Preparations containing glycopyrronium in combination with neostigmine are classified in N07AA51. Trospium see G04BD and A03DA.

Pipenzolate in combination with silicones is classified in A03AB14.

The parenteral DDD for glycopyrronium bromide is based on the use as premedication for anesthetic procedures.

**A03AC** *Synthetic antispasmodics, amides with tertiary amines*

**A03AD** *Papaverine and derivatives*

Combinations with sterculia are classified here. Systemic combinations containing papaverine are classified at the plain level for papaverine.

Papaverine used for treatment of erectil dysfunction, see G04BE.

**A03AE** *Serotonin receptor antagonists*

**A03AX** *Other drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders*

This group comprises drugs for functional gastrointestinal disorders, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Combinations of silicones and antispasmodics are classified in A03AX13 if the main indication is flatulence.

Combinations of silicones and antacids are classified in A02AF.

Combinations of silicones and antipropulsives are classified in A07DA.

Trimethylphloroglucinol and combinations with trimethylphloroglucinol are allowed at the 5th level A03AX12 - *phloroglucinol*.

Dimeticone is classified in A03AX13 - *silicones*.

A03B BELLADONNA AND DERIVATIVES, PLAIN

**A03BA *Belladonna alkaloids, tertiary amines***

**A03BB *Belladonna alkaloids, semisynthetic, quaternary ammonium compounds***

Combinations with codeine are classified in N02AA.

A03C ANTISPASMODICS IN COMBINATION WITH PSYCHOLEPTICS

Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics and other drugs (excl. analgesics) are classified in this group.

Antispasmodics in combination with both psycholeptics and analgesics are classified in A03EA.

The classification at the 5th levels is based on the antispasmodic component. At each 5th level several psycholeptics may occur. When classifying such combined products, it is necessary to look at the main indication and the composition, to see if the preparation should be classified in A03 or in N05 - *Psycholeptics* (see comments under A03).

**A03CA *Synthetic anticholinergic agents in combination with psycholeptics***

General comments, see A03C.

Combinations with more than one antispasmodic substance are classified in a ranking according to the ATC code. A substance classified in A03CA01 takes precedence over a substance classified in A03CA02 etc.

**A03CB *Belladonna and derivatives in combination with psycholeptics***

General comments, see A03C.

Combinations with more than one antispasmodic are classified in a ranking according to the ATC code. A substance classified in A03CB01 takes precedence over a substance classified in A03CB02 etc.

**A03CC *Other antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics***

This group comprises combined preparations with psycholeptics, which are not covered by A03CA and A03CB.

A03D ANTISPASMODICS IN COMBINATION WITH ANALGESICS

This group is completely parallel to A03C.

The classification at the 5th levels is based on the antispasmodic component. At each 5th level several analgesics may occur.

Antispasmodics in combination with analgesics and other drugs (excl. psycholeptics) are classified in this group.

When classifying these combination products, it is necessary to look at the indications and the composition to see if the preparation should be classified in A03 or in N02 - *Analgesics*.

Opioid analgesics in combination with antispasmodics, see N02AG - *Opioids in combination with antispasmodics*. Ethylmorphine is not regarded as a narcotic in this context.

Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics and analgesics are classified in A03EA.

**A03DA *Synthetic anticholinergic agents in combination with analgesics***

General comments, see A03D.

Combinations with more than one antispasmodic are classified in a ranking according to the ATC code. A substance classified in A03DA01 takes precedence over a substance classified in A03DA02 etc.

Combinations containing codeine are classified here, provided the codeine content is less than 20 mg. See also N02AA.

Combinations of trospium and analgesics are classified here.

**A03DB *Belladonna and derivatives in combination with analgesics***

General comments, see A03D.

Combinations with more than one antispasmodic are classified in a ranking according to the ATC code. A substance classified in A03DB01 takes precedence over a substance classified in A03DB02 etc.

**A03DC *Other antispasmodics in combination with analgesics***

This group comprises combined preparations with analgesics, which are not covered by A03DA and A03DB.

**A03E ANTISPASMODICS AND ANTICHOLINERGICS IN COMBINATION WITH OTHER DRUGS**

General comments, see A03.

This group comprises all combined preparations with antispasmodics and anticholinergics, which are not covered by A03C or A03D.

**A03EA *Antispasmodics, psycholeptics and analgesics in combination***

Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics, analgesics and other agents are classified in this group.

**A03ED** *Antispasmodics in combination with other drugs*

A03F PROPULSIVES

**A03FA** *Propulsives*

Agents stimulating gastro-intestinal motility are classified here, e.g. substituted benzamides.

Trimebutine is classified in A03AA.

Levosulpiride is classified in N05AL07.

Domperidone in combination with a proton pump inhibitor is classified in A02BC.

**A04** **ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS**

A04A ANTIEMETICS AND ANTINAUSEANTS

Antihistamines, which are often used as antiemetics, are classified in R06 - *Antihistamines for systemic use*.

Metoclopramide is classified in A03FA.

Combinations with analgesics are classified in N02 - *Analgesics*.

Antivertigo preparations, see N07C.

Antipsychotics, see N05A.

**A04AA** *Serotonin (5HT<sub>3</sub>) antagonists*

The DDDs are based on antiemetic treatment. The DDD for palonosetron is based on single dose treatment.

**A04AD** *Other antiemetics*

Fosaprepitant, a prodrug of aprepitant, is classified together with the parent drug in A04AD12.

Droperidol used for prevention of nausea and vomiting is classified in N05AD.

The DDD for scopolamine plaster is one plaster (i.e. 1 UD). This DDD is based on prophylaxis of motion sickness.

DDDs for other substances classified in this group are based on antiemetic treatment.

The DDDs for aprepitant/fosaprepitant (A04AD12) are based on treatment with 165 mg tablets/150 mg injection given as a single dose on day one of the treatment regimen. The DDD for rolapitant is also based on the single dose treatment on day one of the treatment regimen.

## **A05 BILE AND LIVER THERAPY**

### **A05A BILE THERAPY**

#### **A05AA *Bile acids and derivatives***

Preparations classified in this group are primarily bile acid preparations, but various combinations, e.g. with spasmolytics, can also be included in each 5th level.

#### **A05AB *Preparations for biliary tract therapy***

#### **A05AX *Other drugs for bile therapy***

This group comprises other drugs for bile therapy, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

### **A05B LIVER THERAPY, LIPOTROPICS**

#### **A05BA *Liver therapy***

Thioctic acid is classified in A16AX.

Preparations containing silibinin are classified at the same ATC 5th level as silymarin.

### **A05C DRUGS FOR BILE THERAPY AND LIPOTROPICS IN COMBINATION**

## **A06 DRUGS FOR CONSTIPATION**

### **A06A DRUGS FOR CONSTIPATION**

All agents used for treatment of constipation (regardless of indication) are classified here.

The agents are mainly subdivided according to mode of action. All enemas are classified in A06AG, regardless of mode of action.

Some combination products are classified at separate levels. These are mentioned in the respective ATC group.

Otherwise combination products are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

Laxatives in combination with centrally acting antiobesity agents are classified in A08A - *Antiobesity preparations, excl. diet products*.

#### **A06AA** *Softeners, emollients*

This group comprises preparations containing liquid paraffin, docusate sodium etc. Docusate potassium is classified at the same 5th level as docusate sodium.

Combinations with contact laxatives are classified in A06AB, except all liquid paraffin combinations, which are classified in A06AA.

DDDs for e.g. liquid paraffin and castor oil are given using the following unit: g (gram), (1 g = 1 ml for all practical purposes). Preparations classified in A06AA51 - *liquid paraffin, combinations*, are all given the same DDD = 3 UD (15 ml), independent of liquid paraffin concentration.

#### **A06AB** *Contact laxatives*

This group comprises agents, which mainly inhibit the absorption of electrolytes and water through a specific pharmacological mechanism.

Combinations with osmotically acting laxatives are classified here.

Combinations with bulk producing laxatives are classified in

A06AC - *Bulk-forming laxatives*.

Gas producing rectal preparations and glycerol suppositories, see A06AX - *Other drugs for constipation*.

Phenolphthalein in combination with liquid paraffin, see A06AA.

Combined packages with tablets and enemas are classified in A06AG.

A major part of the products classified in this group are various combinations of two or more contact laxatives. These are classified at separate 5th levels:

A06AB20 - *contact laxatives in combination*

A06AB30 - *contact laxatives in combination with belladonna alkaloids*

Otherwise combination products are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.



Preparations containing bark (cortex) of *Rhamnus purshiana* and *Rhamnus frangula* are classified in A06AB07 cascara.

### **A06AC** *Bulk-forming laxatives*

This group comprises linseed and psylla seed products, methyl cellulose etc.

Lactulose, see A06AD.

Products containing linseed in combination with antacids are classified in A02A.

Products containing sterculia in combination with alverine are classified in A03AX.

### **A06AD** *Osmotically acting laxatives*

This group comprises various saline purgatives and e.g. lactulose, which is primarily considered as an osmotically acting substance.

Combinations with contact laxatives are classified in A06AB.

Mineral salts in combinations are classified in A06AD10.

Combinations of lactulose with liquid paraffin should be classified in A06AD61.

Macrogol in combination with electrolytes is classified in A06AD65.

Magnesium hydroxide is classified as an antacid in A02AA.

Magnesium in combination with albumin tannate are classified in A07XA.

The DDD for macrogol refers to macrogol 4000.

### **A06AG** *Enemas*

All enemas and laxative rectal solutions are classified in this group, regardless of mode of action.

Combined packages containing tablets and enemas are classified in this group.

Some 5th levels for plain substances also include combinations, e.g.:

A06AG10 - docusate sodium- and e.g. sorbitol or glycerol

A06AG11 - sodium lauryl sulfoacetate and e.g. sodium citrate

Sodium laurilsulfate is also classified in A06AG11.

The DDDs for enemas classified in this group are 1 enema.

**A06AH** *Peripheral opioid receptor antagonists*

**A06AX** *Other drugs for constipation*

This group comprises all agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups, e.g. lubiprostone, linaclotide, tenapanor and prucalopride.

The DDD for linaclotide is based on treatment of irritable bowel syndrome with constipation.

**A07** **ANTIDIARRHEALS, INTESTINAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY/ANTIINFECTIVE AGENTS**

**A07A** **INTESTINAL ANTIINFECTIVES**

This group comprises locally acting antiinfectives. Antiinfectives for systemic use, see J - *Antiinfectives for systemic use*.

See also P - *Antiparasitic products, insecticides and repellents*.

**A07AA** *Antibiotics*

Vancomycin and colistin for oral therapy are classified in this group as they are used in enterocolitis. Vancomycin injection/infusion is classified in J01XA - *Glycopeptide antibacterials*, and colistin injection/infusion in J01XB - *Polymyxins*.

Most of the combined products containing more than one antibiotic, contain neomycin. Neomycin is given classification priority, thus all combined products containing neomycin and other antibiotics should be classified in A07AA51 - *neomycin, combinations*.

Paromomycin injection used in the treatment of leishmaniasis is classified here.

The DDDs are based on treatment of intestinal infections.

**A07AB** *Sulfonamides*

The DDDs are based on preoperative prophylaxis of intestinal infections.

**A07AC** *Imidazole derivatives*

The DDDs are based on treatment of gastrointestinal mycosis.

**A07AX** *Other intestinal antiinfectives*

This group comprises antiinfectives, which cannot be classified in A07AA-C.

A07B      **INTESTINAL ADSORBENTS**

Combinations with intestinal antiinfectives are classified in A07A.

**A07BA      *Charcoal preparations***

The DDD for charcoal preparations is based on treatment of common diarrhea.

**A07BB      *Bismuth preparations***

See also A02BX - *Other drugs for peptic ulcer and gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD)*.

No ATC 5th levels are assigned in this group.

**A07BC      *Other intestinal adsorbents***

This group comprises all other intestinal adsorbents.

Combinations with albumin tannate are classified in A07XA.

A07C      **ELECTROLYTES WITH CARBOHYDRATES**

**A07CA      *Oral rehydration salt formulations***

The DDDs are mainly based on use in children.

A07D      **ANTIPROPULSIVES**

**A07DA      *Antipropulsives***

This group comprises agents which reduce gastrointestinal motility, e.g. diphenoxylate and loperamide. Loperamide and loperamide oxide are classified at the two separate 5th levels.

A07DA01 - *diphenoxylate* - includes combinations with atropine.

A07DA02 - *opium* - includes also combinations with belladonna and/or bismuth subgallate, albumin etc.

A07DA52 - *morphine, combinations* includes combinations with e.g. aluminum hydroxide, belladonna alkaloids and kaolin used as antipropulsives. Morphine combinations used in the treatment of pain are classified in N02AA51.

Combinations with antifatulents are classified here.

The DDDs are based on treatment of acute diarrhea.

A07E      INTESTINAL ANTIINFLAMMATORY AGENTS

**A07EA      *Corticosteroids acting locally***

Enemas and rectal foams for treatment of e.g. ulcerative colitis are classified here. Oral corticosteroids solely indicated for the treatment of intestinal inflammatory diseases are also classified here.

Sublingual formulations of budesonide for the treatment of eosinophilic esophagitis and oral formulations of budesonide for the treatment of primary immunoglobulin A nephropathy are classified in this group.

The DDDs are given as 1 enema. The DDD for hydrocortisone rectal foam is given in amount of active substance.

The DDD for oral budesonide is based on the treatment of morbus Crohn. The DDD for the sublingual formulations of budesonide are based on the treatment of eosinophilic esophagitis.

**A07EB      *Antiallergic agents, excl. corticosteroids***

Cromoglicic acid for oral use in food allergy is classified in this group.

The DDD is based on treatment of food allergy.

**A07EC      *Aminosalicylic acid and similar agents***

Some preparations classified in this group are also used for treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

The DDDs are based on treatment of colitis ulcerosa and morbus Crohn.

A07F      ANTIDIARRHEAL MICROORGANISMS

**A07FA      *Antidiarrheal microorganisms***

Preparations with e.g. lactic acid producing organisms are classified in this group.

The DDDs are given in UD (e.g. numbers of tablets).

A07X      OTHER ANTIDIARRHEALS

**A07XA      *Other antidiarrheals***

Combinations with pectin and magnesium peroxide are classified here.

Telotristat for the treatment of carcinoid syndrome diarrhea is classified in A16AX.

**A08 ANTI OBESITY PREPARATIONS, EXCL. DIET PRODUCTS**

**A08A ANTI OBESITY PREPARATIONS, EXCL. DIET PRODUCTS**

Low-energy diets, see V06AA.

**A08AA Centrally acting antiobesity products**

Amphetamine, which is commonly used in psychiatry, is classified in N06B - *Psychostimulants, agents used for ADHD and nootropics*.

Fenfluramine indicated for the treatment of seizures associated with Dravet syndrome is classified in N03AX - *Other antiepileptics*.

**A08AB Peripherally acting antiobesity products**

**A08AX Other antiobesity drugs**

Liraglutide and semaglutide used as antiobesity drugs are classified as blood glucose lowering drugs in A10BJ.

**A09 DIGESTIVES, INCL. ENZYMES**

**A09A DIGESTIVES, INCL. ENZYMES**

**A09AA Enzyme preparations**

Only enzymes used in digestion disorders are classified in this group. Other enzymes, see B06AA - *Enzymes*, and D03BA - *Proteolytic enzymes*.

Enzyme preparations, which are indicated to treat inflammatory conditions, are classified in M09AB - *Enzymes*.

Combinations of digestive enzymes are classified in A09AA02 multienzymes (lipase, protease etc.).

Combinations of digestive enzymes and other agents (e.g. silicone compounds and spasmolytics) are classified in this group if the main indication is digestion disorders.

Cholagogues are classified in A05 - *Bile and liver therapy*.

DDD's can be difficult to establish because of great variations in enzyme content. The DDD's are based on average recommended doses given in different drug catalogues. Most of the preparations are combinations of different enzymes, and the DDD's are therefore given in UD's. Some specific products have been given a DDD, see list of DDD's for combination products, [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

**A09AB Acid preparations**

**A09AC Enzyme and acid preparations, combinations**

**A10 DRUGS USED IN DIABETES**  
**A10A INSULINS AND ANALOGUES**

This group comprises both human - and animal insulins.

Insulin preparations are classified at 4 different 4th levels, according to onset and duration of action. Each 4th level is differentiated in 5th levels according to origin of insulin.

Products consisting of, e.g. beef and pork insulin, are classified as combinations (30-levels) at each 4th level according to onset and duration of action.

The DDD for insulins is 40 units.

**A10AB *Insulins and analogues for injection, fast-acting***

**A10AC *Insulins and analogues for injection, intermediate-acting***

**A10AD *Insulins and analogues for injection, intermediate- or long-acting combined with fast-acting***

Combinations of fast acting insulins with intermediate-acting or long-acting insulins are classified in the 5th levels here.

**A10AE *Insulins and analogues for injection, long-acting***

**A10AF *Insulins and analogues for inhalation***

**A10B BLOOD GLUCOSE LOWERING DRUGS, EXCL. INSULINS**

Fixed combinations of blood glucose lowering drugs and lipid modifying agents are classified here.

**A10BA *Biguanides***

**A10BB *Sulfonylureas***

The DDD for micronized glibenclamide is lower compared to non-micronized formulations, due to higher bioavailability.

The DDD for gliclazide is based on the modified release formulation.

**A10BC *Sulfonamides (heterocyclic)***

**A10BD *Combinations of oral blood glucose lowering drugs***

Combinations with thioctic acid are allowed in A10BD05.

It has been considered most appropriate to assign fixed DDDs based on the average use of the different combinations without considering and comparing the strengths of the various components. One UD is the fixed DDD for products dosed as 1 tablet daily whereas two UD is the fixed DDD for products dosed as 2 tablets daily. The assigned DDDs cannot always be compared with the DDDs assigned for plain preparations.

See list of DDDs for combined products, [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

**A10BF** *Alpha glucosidase inhibitors*

**A10BG** *Thiazolidinediones*

The DDD for troglitazone is based on combination therapy. The DDDs for rosiglitazone and pioglitazone are based on monotherapy.

**A10BH** *Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP-4) inhibitors*

**A10BJ** *Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) analogues*

**A10BK** *Sodium-glucose co-transporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors*

Inhibitors of SGLT1 and SGLT2, e.g. sotagliflozin, are also classified here.

**A10BX** *Other blood glucose lowering drugs, excl. insulins*

Low strength tablets (e.g. 0.8 mg) of bromocriptine are classified in G02CB01.

Nateglinide in combination with thioctic acid is classified in A10BX03.

**A10X** OTHER DRUGS USED IN DIABETES

**A10XA** *Aldose reductase inhibitors*

**A11** **VITAMINS**

Vitamins constitute a comprehensive group of therapeutic and prophylactic preparations. Before classifying any product it is important to be familiar with the main subdivision of the group.

It may be necessary to consider whether a product is a vitamin preparation with iron or an iron preparation with vitamins, a mineral preparation with vitamins or a vitamin preparation with minerals, or if the product should be regarded as a tonic etc. As an aid to such considerations, guidelines are given at each sublevel.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is classified in B03 - *Antianemic preparations*.

Vitamin K is classified in B02 - *Antihemorrhagics*.

Vitamins administered as i.v. solution additives, see B05XC.

Some definitions:

**Multivitamins:** Products containing minimum vitamins A, B, C and D. One B-vitamin is sufficient.

**B-complex:** Products containing minimum thiamine, riboflavine, pyridoxine, nicotinamide. The products may contain other B-vitamins.

Combinations of vitamins, vitamins with minerals or other substances that do not belong to other 4th levels and are mainly indicated as food supplements, see A11J.

## A11A MULTIVITAMINS, COMBINATIONS

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis. For simplicity, the DDDs for oral formulations are given as fixed doses (1 tablet = 1 UD; 30 ml mixture = 6 UD).

### A11AA *Multivitamins with minerals*

The group is subdivided:

A11AA01 - *multivitamins and iron*

A11AA02 - *multivitamins and calcium*

A11AA03 - *multivitamins and other minerals, incl. combinations*

A11AA04 - *multivitamins and trace elements*

In A11AA01, 02 and 03, combinations with trace elements are allowed.

In A11AA04 only trace elements are allowed in addition to multivitamins.

Combinations with other substances, e.g. caffeine, are classified in A11AB.

Cholin, biotin, inositol and para-amino benzoic acid are regarded as vitamins and are allowed in preparations classified in A11AA.

#### **A11AA01 multivitamins and iron**

Preparations containing multivitamins and sub-therapeutic doses of iron are classified in this group.

Sub-therapeutic doses of iron are defined as 5-30 mg of Fe<sup>2+</sup> per defined daily dose, with corresponding limits for the various Fe<sup>3+</sup> salts, if the main indication is not "iron deficiency". Preparations containing more than 30 mg Fe<sup>2+</sup> (or corresponding doses of Fe<sup>3+</sup>) are classified as iron preparations (B03A) regardless of therapeutic use.

See also A11AA.



**A11AA02      multivitamins and calcium**

Preparations containing multivitamins and sub-therapeutic doses of calcium are classified in this group, e.g. a calcium content of up to 500 mg calcium carbonate per tablet have been allowed.

See also A11AA.

Calcium preparations, see A12A.

**A11AA03      multivitamins and other minerals, incl. combinations**

Preparations containing multivitamins and sub-therapeutic doses of one or more mineral are classified in this group. Definitions of sub-therapeutic doses of iron and calcium, see A11AA01 and A11AA02. See also A11AA.

Mineral supplements, see A12.

**A11AA04      multivitamins and trace elements**

Preparations containing multivitamins and trace elements are classified in this group. No other combinations should occur in this group.

**A11AB      *Multivitamins, other combinations***

This group comprises all combined preparations with multivitamins, which are not classified in A11AA.

Preparations containing caffeine etc. are classified in this group.

Preparations containing cholin, biotin, inositol, para-amino benzoic acid etc. should be classified in A11AA.

A11B      MULTIVITAMINS, PLAIN

**A11BA      *Multivitamins, plain***

Only plain multivitamin preparations are allowed.

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis. For simplicity, the DDDs are given as fixed doses (1 tablet = 1 UD; 30 ml mixture = 6 UD).

A11C      VITAMIN A AND D, INCL. COMBINATIONS OF THE TWO

Combinations with trace elements are allowed. Other combinations, see A11J - *Other vitamin products, combinations*.

See also A12 - *Mineral supplements*.

**A11CA      *Vitamin A, plain***

The DDD is based on treatment of vitamin A deficiency.

**A11CB Vitamin A and D in combination**

Cod-liver oil products are classified in this group.

**A11CC Vitamin D and analogues**

Vitamin D and analogues may be regarded as hormones, but are classified in this group. Calcium homeostasis, see H05.

Paricalcitol and doxercalciferol indicated for the prevention and treatment of secondary hyperparathyroidism are classified in H05BX - *Other anti-parathyroid agents*.

Oral formulations of calcifediol, solely indicated for treatment of renal secondary hyperparathyroidism are classified in H05BX - *Other anti-parathyroid agents*, while all other pharmaceutical formulations of calcifediol are classified in A11CC06.

Colecalciferol in combination with sodium fluoride indicated for prophylaxis of rickets and caries is classified in A11CC55.

The DDDs are based on therapeutic use. No DDD is established for ergocalciferol due to great differences between doses used for various indications. The DDD of 20 mcg colecalciferol corresponds to 800 IU.

**A11D VITAMIN B<sub>1</sub>, PLAIN AND IN COMBINATION WITH VITAMIN B<sub>6</sub> AND B<sub>12</sub>**

Combinations with trace elements are allowed. Other combinations see A11J - *Other vitamin products, combinations*.

**A11DA Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, plain**

The DDDs are based on treatment of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency.

**A11DB Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in combination with vitamin B<sub>6</sub> and/or vitamin B<sub>12</sub>**

Combinations with vitamin B<sub>2</sub> are also allowed in this group.

For vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in combination with vitamin B<sub>6</sub> and/or vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, DDDs are only established for parenteral preparations, based on the volume of one ampoule. The DDDs are given in UD (1 UD = 1 ml).

**A11E VITAMIN B-COMPLEX, INCL. COMBINATIONS**

Definition of vitamin B-complex, see A11 - *Vitamins*.

The group is subdivided:

A11EA - *Vitamin B-complex, plain*

A11EB - *Vitamin B-complex with vitamin C*

A11EC - *Vitamin B-complex with minerals*

A11ED - *Vitamin B-complex with anabolic steroids*

A11EX - *Vitamin B-complex, other combinations*

Combinations with trace elements are allowed. Vitamin B-complex in combination with other vitamins than vitamin C, see A11J - *Other vitamin products, combinations*.

DDD's are based on prophylaxis. DDD's are given as fixed doses (1 tablet = 1 UD; 30 ml mixture = 6 UD). DDD's for parenteral preparations are based on the volume of one ampoule. The DDD's for these preparations are given in UD's (1 UD = 1 ml).

**A11EA** *Vitamin B-complex, plain*

This group comprises plain vitamin B-complex preparations, also in combination with liver extract. Liver extract preparations, see also B03BA - *Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cyanocobalamin and derivatives)*. See also A11E.

**A11EB** *Vitamin B-complex with vitamin C*

This group comprises all combinations of vitamin B-complex and vitamin C. Combinations with anabolic steroids, see A11ED.

See also A11E, A11ED and A11EX.

**A11EC** *Vitamin B-complex with minerals*

Preparations containing vitamin B-complex and sub-therapeutic doses of one or more mineral are classified in this group.

See also A11E.

Mineral supplements, see A12.

**A11ED** *Vitamin B-complex with anabolic steroids*

Preparations containing vitamin B-complex and anabolic steroids are classified in this group. Even combinations containing vitamin C, minerals or other substances, e.g. caffeine are classified in this group.

**A11EX** *Vitamin B-complex, other combinations*

This group comprises preparations with vitamin B-complex (plain or in combination with vitamin C or minerals) and other substances, e.g. caffeine.

A11G ASCORBIC ACID (VITAMIN C), INCL. COMBINATIONS

Other preparations with vitamin C, see A11EB - *Vitamin B-complex with vitamin C*, and A11J - *Other vitamin products, combinations*.

Combinations with analgesics are classified in N02B.

The DDD refers to the assumed daily requirement.

For combination products, the DDDs are given as fixed doses for all tablets (1 tablet = 1 UD).

**A11GA** *Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), plain*

Combinations with trace elements only, are allowed.

**A11GB** *Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), combinations*

This group comprises combinations with e.g. minerals.

Preparations containing ascorbic acid and calcium should be classified in A12AX - *Calcium, combinations with vitamin D and/or other drugs* - if they are used in calcium deficiency or osteoporosis.

A11H OTHER PLAIN VITAMIN PREPARATIONS

**A11HA** *Other plain vitamin preparations*

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, see B03BA.

Vitamin K, see B02 - *Antihemorrhagics*.

Combinations with trace elements are allowed. Other combinations, see A11DB and A11J.

DDD's are established only for tocopherol, pyridoxine and nicotinamide, and refer to assumed daily requirement in vitamin deficiency.

A11J OTHER VITAMIN PRODUCTS, COMBINATIONS

The group is subdivided:

A11JA - *Combinations of vitamins*

A11JB - *Vitamins with minerals*

A11JC - *Vitamins, other combinations*

Combinations with trace elements are allowed.

The DDDs are given as fixed doses (1 tablet = 1 UD; 30 ml mixture = 6 UD), except for concentrated ACD vitamin drops.

**A11JA**    **Combinations of vitamins**

This group comprises all combinations of vitamins with no addition of other substances, not covered by the preceding groups.

**A11JB**    **Vitamins with minerals**

This group comprises all combinations of vitamins with minerals in sub-therapeutic doses, not covered by the preceding groups. Definitions of sub-therapeutic doses of iron and calcium, see A11AA01 and A11AA02.

See also A12 - *Mineral supplements*.

**A11JC**    **Vitamins, other combinations**

This group comprises all products, which contain vitamins (with or without minerals) and in addition other substances, e.g. caffeine. Combinations with melatonin not indicated for sleep disorders are classified here. Combinations with folic acid are classified in B03BB if "folic acid deficiency" is the main indication.

This group contains products, which may also be regarded as tonics. No sharp line has been drawn between these two groups.

Tonics are classified in A13. The vitamin content of tonics should be rather low.

**A12**        **MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS**

This group contains mineral supplements used for treatment of mineral deficiency. All parenteral solutions of electrolytes are classified in B05B or in B05X. Magnesium carbonate used for treatment of mineral deficiency is classified in A02AA01.

A12A        CALCIUM

**A12AA**    **Calcium**

Plain calcium preparations, incl. bone extracts are classified in this group. Calcium acetate mainly used for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia, is classified in V03AE07.

See also B05X - *I.v. solution additives*.

Combinations of different calcium salts are given the following ATC code: A12AA20. Small amounts of calcium carbonate (i.e. 300 mg per tablet) are, however, allowed at each 5th level for plain calcium preparations.

Combinations of calcium and vitamin D are classified in A12AX.

The combination of calcium acetate and magnesium carbonate is classified in V03AE.

Antacids with calcium carbonate are classified in A02AC.

See also:

A11AA02 - *multivitamins and calcium*

A11EC - *Vitamin B-complex with minerals*

A11GB01 - *ascorbic acid (vit C) and calcium*

A11JB - *Vitamins with minerals*

The DDDs are based on treatment of calcium deficiency and osteoporosis.

### **A12AX** *Calcium, combinations with vitamin D and/or other drugs*

This group comprises all combined calcium preparations used in the treatment of calcium deficiency conditions and osteoporosis. Many of these are combinations with vitamins, especially vitamin A and D.

Combination packages of calcium and bisphosphonates are classified in M05BB.

Combinations with fluoride are classified in A12CD.

### **A12B** POTASSIUM

#### **A12BA** *Potassium*

This group comprises preparations used as potassium supplements.

This group comprises also all combined potassium preparations used in the treatment of potassium deficiency conditions. Potassium citrate preparations indicated for e.g. treatment of renal tubular acidosis with calcium stones are classified here.

Small non-therapeutic amounts of potassium hydrogencarbonate are allowed at each level of plain potassium salts.

Potassium, combinations with other drugs, are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

Diuretics and potassium in combination, see C03 - *Diuretics*.

See also B05 - *Blood substitutes and perfusion solutions*.

The DDDs are based on treatment of potassium deficiency and correspond to a potassium content of about 40 mmol potassium.

## A12C OTHER MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS

This group comprises other minerals.

See also B05 - *Blood substitutes and perfusion solutions*.

### **A12CA Sodium**

The DDD has been set to 1 g NaCl.

### **A12CB Zinc**

The DDD is based on treatment of zinc deficiency.

### **A12CC Magnesium**

Combinations with subtherapeutic amounts of vitamins are included in this group.

The DDDs for the various magnesium salts are equivalent to an assumed daily requirement of 300 mg magnesium (oral dose). The DDD for some of the oral formulations are higher than the parenteral formulations due to lower bioavailability.

### **A12CD Fluoride**

This group comprises preparations used e.g. in the treatment of osteoporosis. Fluoride used in caries prophylaxis, see A01AA - *Caries prophylactic agents*.

Bisphosphonates are classified in M05B.

Calcitonin is classified in H05BA.

Calcium preparations are classified in A12A.

Combinations with calcium are classified here.

The DDD is based on treatment of osteoporosis.

### **A12CE Selenium**

The DDDs are based on treatment of selenium deficiency and is expressed as amount of selenium (Se).

### **A12CX Other mineral products**

**A13 TONICS**

**A13A TONICS**

This group comprises preparations used as tonics etc., if preparations do not fill the requirements to be classified as iron preparations, vitamin preparations etc.

All mixtures classified in this group are given a fixed DDD (30 ml = 6 UD).

**A14 ANABOLIC AGENTS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

**A14A ANABOLIC STEROIDS**

Anabolic steroids are subdivided in different 4th levels according to chemical structure.

Anabolic steroids used exclusively in cancer therapy, see L - *Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents*.

The DDDs are based on e.g. treatment of anemia.

**A14AA *Androstan derivatives***

Systemic formulations (e.g. tablets/injections) of prasterone are classified here while prasterone for vaginal use is classified in G03XX.

**A14AB *Estren derivatives***

**A14B OTHER ANABOLIC AGENTS**

This group comprises all other anabolic agents which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**A15 APPETITE STIMULANTS**

This group comprises preparations only used as appetite stimulants.

A number of drugs with other main actions may have appetite stimulating properties.

Cyproheptadine, also used as an appetite stimulant in children, is classified in R06AX. Pizotifen is classified in N02CX.

No DDDs are established in this group.



**A16 OTHER ALIMENTARY TRACT AND METABOLISM PRODUCTS**

**A16A OTHER ALIMENTARY TRACT AND METABOLISM PRODUCTS**

This group comprises all products acting on the alimentary tract and metabolism which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. V03 - *All other therapeutic products*, should also be considered.

Nutrients are classified in V06 - *General nutrients*.

**A16AA *Amino acids and derivatives***

Agents used in various metabolic deficiency states are classified here, when this is considered to be the main indication e.g. levocarnitine. Tryptophan and oxitriptan are classified in N06A.

Metreleptin used for treatment of complications of leptin deficiency in patients with generalised lipodystrophy is classified in this group.

Glutamine for treatment of sickle cell disease is classified here.

The DDD of levocarnitine is based on treatment of primary carnitine deficiency.

**A16AB *Enzymes***

This group includes gene therapy products resulting in the expression of specific enzymes.

**A16AX *Various alimentary tract and metabolism products***

Thioctic acid is classified in this group.

This group includes gene therapy products resulting in the expression of specific proteins.

The DDD for zinc acetate is expressed as the amount of zinc (Zn).

The DDD for nitisinone is based on the treatment of children with a bodyweight of 20 kg.

The DDD for thioctic acid is based on the treatment of patients with peripheral diabetic polyneuropathy.

The DDD for miglustat is based on the treatment of Gauchers disease.

**B BLOOD AND BLOOD FORMING ORGANS**

**B01 ANTITHROMBOTIC AGENTS**

A *Antithrombotic agents*

**B02 ANTIHEMORRHAGICS**

A *Antifibrinolytics*

B *Vitamin K and other hemostatics*

**B03 ANTIANEMIC PREPARATIONS**

A *Iron preparations*

B *Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folic acid*

X *Other antianemic preparations*

**B05 BLOOD SUBSTITUTES AND PERFUSION SOLUTIONS**

A *Blood and related products*

B *I.v. solutions*

C *Irrigating solutions*

D *Peritoneal dialytics*

X *I.v. solution additives*

Z *Hemodialytics and hemofiltrates*

**B06 OTHER HEMATOLOGICAL AGENTS**

A *Other hematological agents*

## **B BLOOD AND BLOOD FORMING ORGANS**

### **B01 ANTITHROMBOTIC AGENTS**

#### **B01A ANTITHROMBOTIC AGENTS**

##### ***B01AA Vitamin K antagonists***

This group comprises vitamin K antagonists such as dicoumarol, warfarin etc.

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis of thrombosis.

##### ***B01AB Heparin group***

This group comprises heparin preparations, including products for non-therapeutic use, e.g. for rinsing of indwelling vein cannulas. Heparin sodium and heparin calcium are classified at the same 5th level, i.e. B01AB01. The low molecular weight heparins are classified at separate 5th levels.

Both human-derived and recombinant products of antithrombin III are classified in B01AB02.

The DDDs of nonfractionated heparin and antithrombin are based on prophylaxis of thrombosis and pulmonary emboli, and given in international units (U). The DDDs for the different low molecular weight heparins are assigned according to their recommended dose in prophylaxis of deep vein thrombosis in moderate risk patients. Since the anti Xa activity is a major determinant of the anticoagulant activity of low molecular weight heparins the DDDs are given in international units based on anti Xa activity.

The DDD for sulodexide is expressed in lipoprotein lipase releasing units (LSU).

##### ***B01AC Platelet aggregation inhibitors excl. heparin***

Acetylsalicylic acid preparations specifically intended for use as antithrombotic agents are classified in this group. This exception from the basic principle of only one code for each route of administration is made because of the extensive use of acetylsalicylic acid both as an antithrombotic agent and as an analgesic. Whether an acetylsalicylic acid product should be classified in this group or in N02BA, should be decided at the national level based on the main indication of the product.

Lysine acetylsalicylate is classified at the same 5th level as acetylsalicylic acid.

Sulfinpyrazone is classified in M04AB. Alprostadil is classified in C01EA and G04BE.

Combinations of acetylsalicylic acid and statins are classified in C10BX.

Combinations of acetylsalicylic acid, ACE inhibitors and statins are classified in C10BX.

Combinations of acetylsalicylic acid and beta blocking agents are classified in C07FX.

Prostaglandines are classified in this group while other agents used for pulmonary arterial hypertension are classified in C02KX or in G04BE.

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis of thrombosis. The DDDs of acetylsalicylic acid and carbasalate calcium are given as 1 tablet independent of tablet strength. This is due to the great variations between different countries in the dosages/strengths recommended for prophylaxis of thrombosis.

The DDD of iloprost is based on treatment of peripheral vascular disease.

The DDD of vorapaxar is based on the content of one tablet (2.08 mg).

The DDD of selexipag is based on treatment of pulmonary arterial hypertension.

For combinations products, see list of DDDs for combinations, [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

#### **B01AD** *Enzymes*

The DDDs of streptokinase, alteplase, anistreplase and reteplase are based on thrombolytic treatment in connection with acute myocardial infarction. The DDD of urokinase is based on treatment of acute lung emboli. The DDDs are either expressed in international units or gram.

#### **B01AE** *Direct thrombin inhibitors*

The DDD for dabigatran etexilate is based on treatment of patients with NVAf (nonvalvular atrial fibrillation).

#### **B01AF** *Direct factor Xa inhibitors*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of patients with NVAf (nonvalvular atrial fibrillation).

**B01AX** *Other antithrombotic agents*

The DDD for caplacizumab is 10 mg (P) based on the European labelling and equivalent to 11 mg in the USA labelling.

**B02** **ANTIHEMORRHAGICS**

**B02A** ANTIFIBRINOLYTICS

This group comprises agents, which inhibit fibrinolytic activity.

Combinations with vitamin K, see B02B - *Vitamin K and other hemostatics*.

The DDDs are based on treatment of hemorrhage associated with fibrinolysis.

**B02AA** *Amino acids*

**B02AB** *Proteinase inhibitors*

Combinations with aprotinin used as local hemostatics are classified in B02BC30.

**B02B** VITAMIN K AND OTHER HEMOSTATICS

The DDDs are based on treatment of hemorrhage associated with different deficiency states (e.g. vitamin K deficiency, deficiency of different blood coagulation factors etc.).

**B02BA** *Vitamin K*

**B02BB** *Fibrinogen*

Preparations containing human fibrinogen for systemic use are classified here. B02BB01 is reserved for systemic formulations only.

**B02BC** *Local hemostatics*

This group comprises gauze, tampons etc. impregnated with hemostatic agents. Local hemostatics used in dentistry, see A01AD - *Other agents for local oral treatment*. Epinephrine injection, see C01C - *Cardiac stimulants excl. cardiac glycosides*. Tissue adhesives, e.g. cyanoacrylate based adhesives, are classified in V03AK. Combinations of e.g. human fibrinogen, aprotinin, thrombin and collagen are classified in B02BC30.

No DDDs are established for local hemostatics classified in this group.

### **B02BD** *Blood coagulation factors*

This group comprises all blood coagulation factors, thrombin etc., incl. preparations for local use, and their combinations.

For systemic formulations of fibrinogen (factor I), see - B02BB - *Fibrinogen*.

Prothrombin complexes containing three or all four factors are classified in B02BD01 *coagulation factor IX, II, VII and X*.

Both human derived and recombinant factor VIII and factor IX products will be classified in B02BD02 - *coagulation factor VIII* and B02BD04 - *coagulation factor IX*, respectively.

No DDDs are established for blood coagulation factors. The use of blood coagulation factors could be measured in blood factor units (IU).

### **B02BX** *Other systemic hemostatics*

This group comprises systemic hemostatics, which cannot be classified elsewhere.

The DDD for avatrombopag is based on the starting dose in the treatment of chronic immune thrombocytopenia.

## **B03** **ANTIANEMIC PREPARATIONS**

### **B03A** **IRON PREPARATIONS**

This group comprises all plain iron preparations and all combination products containing more than 30 mg Fe<sup>2+</sup> (or corresponding amounts of Fe<sup>3+</sup> salts) per defined daily dose (DDD) of the product, regardless of therapeutic use.

Combined preparations with 30 mg or less Fe<sup>2+</sup> per DDD should be classified as vitamin preparations in group A11 or as tonics in group A13. All iron preparations with "iron deficiency" as the main indication are classified in B03A, regardless of the amount of iron salts.

Only plain preparations should be classified in the groups B03AA, B03AB and B03AC. Combinations with stabilizing agents (e.g. ascorbic acid) are allowed at each 5th level. Combinations with e.g. laxatives are classified at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

Other combinations, see B03AD and B03AE.

**B03AA Iron bivalent, oral preparations**

The DDDs are based on treatment of iron deficiency anemia. The DDDs are established according to amount of  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$  and are equal for all compounds regardless of iron salt (i.e. the DDD corresponds to 0.2 g  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ ).

**B03AB Iron trivalent, oral preparations**

Ferric citrate mainly used for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia, is classified in V03AE08.

The DDDs are based on treatment of iron deficiency anemia. Separate DDDs are established for the different trivalent iron salts. The DDDs are expressed in grams of  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ .

**B03AC Iron, parenteral preparations**

The DDDs are based on treatment of iron deficiency anemia. The DDDs are established according to amount of Fe and are equal for all compounds (i.e. the DDD corresponds to 0.1 g Fe).

**B03AD Iron in combination with folic acid**

This group comprises iron in combination with folic acid. Preparations containing additional substances, see B03AE.

Historically:

The DDDs have been based on prophylaxis of iron deficiency anemia and folic acid deficiency during pregnancy (i.e. about half the iron dose for treatment of anemia).

**B03AE Iron in other combinations**

This group comprises preparations, which in addition to iron or iron and folic acid contain other substances.

The group is subdivided:

B03AE01 - *iron, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folic acid*

Intrinsic factor and/or liver extract are also allowed in this group

B03AE02 - *iron, multivitamins and folic acid*

B03AE03 - *iron and multivitamins*

B03AE04 - *iron, multivitamins and minerals*

B03AE10 - *various combinations*

This group comprises some "borderline" combined iron preparations i.e. preparations with an iron content of approximately 30 mg Fe<sup>2+</sup> per defined daily dose (DDD).

Historically:

For combinations of iron, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folic acid (B03AE01), the DDDs have been based on prophylaxis of iron deficiency anemia and folic acid deficiency during pregnancy.

Various combinations, classified in B03AE10, contain very small amounts of iron. The DDDs for these combinations have been based on dose recommendations, and can be as low as corresponding to 30 mg Fe<sup>2+</sup>.

The DDDs for iron in other combinations have been based on treatment of iron deficiency anemia, and correspond to a DDD of 0.2 g Fe<sup>2+</sup>.

B03B VITAMIN B<sub>12</sub> AND FOLIC ACID

**B03BA *Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cyanocobalamin and analogues)***

Hydroxocobalamin for treatment of neuralgia is classified here.

Combinations with liver extract are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series. Combinations with folic acid are classified in this group by using the 50-series.

Combinations indicated for symptomatic treatment of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency are classified in B03BA51.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, see also:

A11D - *Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, plain and in combination with vitamin B<sub>6</sub> and B<sub>12</sub>*

A11EA - *Vitamin B-complex, plain*

B03A - *Iron preparations*

The DDDs are based on maintenance treatment of pernicious anemia. Different DDDs are assigned for oral and parenteral formulations of cyanocobalamin due to great differences in bioavailability.

The DDD for mecobalamin is based on the treatment of peripheral neuropathies.

**B03BB *Folic acid and derivatives***

Folic acid and derivatives in combination with other substances are classified in this group at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series, if folic acid deficiency is the main indication. Folinates, used as



antidotes, are classified in V03A. Combinations with iron, see B03AD and B03AE. Folic acid for diagnostic use is classified in V04CX - *Other diagnostic agents*.

Combinations with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> are classified in B03BA.

The DDD for oral folic acid is based on prophylactic use and the parenteral DDD is based on treatment.

## B03X OTHER ANTIANEMIC PREPARATIONS

This group comprises antianemic preparations other than iron, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and folic acid.

### **B03XA** *Other antianemic preparations*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of renal anemia in patients maintained by -dialysis.

The DDD for luspatercept is based on the starting dose in the treatment of myelodysplastic syndromes and beta-thalassaemia.

## B05 BLOOD SUBSTITUTES AND PERFUSION SOLUTIONS

See also:

V07AB - *Solvents and diluting agents, incl. irrigating solutions*

V07AC - *Blood transfusion, auxiliary products*

No DDDs are established in this group. It is considered difficult to establish DDDs, because of the great variations in dosages given.

## B05A BLOOD AND RELATED PRODUCTS

### **B05AA** *Blood substitutes and plasma protein fractions*

Polygeline is classified in B05AA06 gelatin agents.

ATC level B05AA07 hydroxyethylstarch includes starches that have been etherified to varying extent e.g. hepta-, hexa-, penta-, and tetrastarches.

### **B05AX** *Other blood products*

## B05B I.V. SOLUTIONS

This group comprises i.v. solutions used in parenteral administration of fluids, electrolytes and nutrients. I.v. solution additives (i.v. concentrates), see B05X.

**B05BA**    ***Solutions for parenteral nutrition***

This group comprises amino acids, carbohydrates, fat emulsions etc. for parenteral nutrition. Combinations with electrolytes are allowed. Combinations of electrolytes and glucose are classified in B05BB - *Solutions affecting the electrolyte balance*. These and similar combinations are not primarily used as nutrients.

**B05BB**    ***Solutions affecting the electrolyte balance***

This group comprises electrolyte solutions, incl. combinations with e.g. carbohydrates. Combinations with amino acids, fat etc. should be classified in B05BA.

**B05BC**    ***Solutions producing osmotic diuresis***

**B05C**    **IRRIGATING SOLUTIONS**

In this group products used for bladder irrigation, surgical irrigation, incl. instruments etc. are classified. See also V07AB - *Solvents and diluting agents, incl. irrigating solutions*.

Combined preparations are classified by using 5th level - 10. Only plain preparations are classified at the other 5th levels.

**B05CA**    ***Antiinfectives***

**B05CB**    ***Salt solutions***

**B05CX**    ***Other irrigating solutions***

**B05D**    **PERITONEAL DIALYTICS**

**B05DA**    ***Isotonic solutions***

**B05DB**    ***Hypertonic solutions***

**B05X**    **I.V. SOLUTION ADDITIVES**

I.v. solution additives (i.v. concentrates) are concentrated preparations containing substances used for correcting fluid and electrolyte balance and nutritional status.

**B05XA**    ***Electrolyte solutions***

This group comprises plain electrolyte solutions, combinations of electrolytes, and combinations of electrolytes and other substances (e.g. trace elements). Products containing trace elements only are classified in B05XA31.

See also A12 - *Mineral supplements*.

**B05XB** *Amino acids*

**B05XC** *Vitamins*

See also A11 - *Vitamins*

**B05XX** *Other i.v. solution additives*

This group comprises all i.v. additives, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**B05Z** HEMODIALYTICS AND HEMOFILTRATES

**B05ZA** *Hemodialytics, concentrates*

**B05ZB** *Hemofiltrates*

Hemofiltration solutions are classified in this group.

**B06** **OTHER HEMATOLOGICAL AGENTS**

**B06A** OTHER HEMATOLOGICAL AGENTS

This group includes preparations for local and systemic use, and also some preparations used for dissolving clots in catheters, hemodialysis clots etc.

See also:

V07A - *All other non-therapeutic products*

B01AB - *Heparin group*

**B06AA** *Enzymes*

This group comprises enzymes with fibrinolytic properties. Enzymes with other well defined therapeutic use should be classified in the respective groups, see e.g.:

A09A - *Digestives, incl. enzymes*

B01AD - *Enzymes*

D03BA - *Proteolytic enzymes*

S01KX - *Other surgical aids*

**B06AB** *Heme products*

Givosiran indicated for acute hepatic porphyria is classified in A16AX - *Various alimentary tract and metabolism products*.

**B06AC** *Drugs used in hereditary angioedema*

The DDD for lanadelumab is based on the starting dose.

**B06AX** *Other hematological agents*

Glutamine for treatment of sickle cell disease is classified in A16AA03.

## **C        **CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM****

### **C01        **CARDIAC THERAPY****

- A    *Cardiac glycosides*
- B    *Antiarrhythmics, class I and III*
- C    *Cardiac stimulants excl. cardiac glycosides*
- D    *Vasodilators used in cardiac diseases*
- E    *Other cardiac preparations*

### **C02        **ANTIHYPERTENSIVES****

- A    *Antiadrenergic agents, centrally acting*
- B    *Antiadrenergic agents, ganglion-blocking*
- C    *Antiadrenergic agents, peripherally acting*
- D    *Arteriolar smooth muscle, agents acting on*
- K    *Other antihypertensives*
- L    *Antihypertensives and diuretics in combination*
- N    *Combinations of antihypertensives in ATC-gr. C02*

### **C03        **DIURETICS****

- A    *Low-ceiling diuretics, thiazides*
- B    *Low-ceiling diuretics, excl. thiazides*
- C    *High-ceiling diuretics*
- D    *Aldosterone antagonists and other potassium-sparing agents*
- E    *Diuretics and potassium-sparing agents in combination*
- X    *Other diuretics*

### **C04        **PERIPHERAL VASODILATORS****

- A    *Peripheral vasodilators*

### **C05        **VASOPROTECTIVES****

- A    *Agents for treatment of hemorrhoids and anal fissures for topical use*
- B    *Antivaricose therapy*
- C    *Capillary stabilizing agents*

**C07 BETA BLOCKING AGENTS**

- A *Beta blocking agents*
- B *Beta blocking agents and thiazides*
- C *Beta blocking agents and other diuretics*
- D *Beta blocking agents, thiazides and other diuretics*
- E *Beta blocking agents and vasodilators*
- F *Beta blocking agents and other antihypertensives*

**C08 CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS**

- C *Selective calcium channel blockers with mainly vascular effects*
- D *Selective calcium channel blockers with direct cardiac effects*
- E *Non-selective calcium channel blockers*
- G *Calcium channel blockers and diuretics*

**C09 AGENTS ACTING ON THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN SYSTEM**

- A *ACE inhibitors, plain*
- B *ACE inhibitors, combinations*
- C *Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), plain*
- D *Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), combinations*
- X *Other agents acting on the renin-angiotensin system*

**C10 LIPID MODIFYING AGENTS**

- A *Lipid modifying agents, plain*
- B *Lipid modifying agents, combinations*

## **C      **CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM****

This group comprises substances used for the treatment of cardiovascular conditions.

Drugs used for the treatment of hypertension are classified in C02 – Antihypertensives, C03 - Diuretics, C07 - Beta blocking agents, C08 - Calcium channel blockers, and C09 - Agents acting on the renin-angiotensin system. For the classification of combination products of antihypertensives from different ATC groups, the following ranking should be used, from higher to lower precedence: C09, C07, C08, , and C03.

### **C01      **CARDIAC THERAPY****

#### **C01A      CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES**

This group comprises plain and combined preparations containing cardiac glycosides, incl. standardized herbal extracts. Cardiac glycosides in combination with substances in group C01D and C01E are classified in this group. Combinations with antihypertensives, beta blocking agents, calcium channel blockers and ACE inhibitors, see group C02, C07, C08 and C09 respectively.

The DDDs are based on the average maintenance dose for the treatment of cardiac failure. Exception: the DDD for deslanoside is for acute treatment.

#### **C01AA      *Digitalis glycosides***

Combinations with diuretics are classified here.

#### **C01AB      *Scilla glycosides***

#### **C01AC      *Strophanthus glycosides***

#### **C01AX      *Other cardiac glycosides***

#### **C01B      ANTIARRHYTHMICS, CLASS I AND III**

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of arrhythmias.

The agents are listed according to the Vaughan Williams classification of antiarrhythmics. The division of class I antiarrhythmics may vary, depending on the literature used. The 3rd ed. of Avery's "Drug Treatment" (1987) and "Drugs" 31, 93 - 95, 1986 are used as a basis for the ATC classification. Class II antiarrhythmics see C07 and class IV, see C08 (e.g. verapamil).

Adenosine, which is also used as an antiarrhythmic, is classified in C01EB.

Combined preparations are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series. Combinations with psycholeptics are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 70-series. Combinations with an antihypertensive e.g. reserpine are classified in C02AA.

The DDDs are based on the prophylaxis and treatment of supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias. The DDDs are based on the maintenance dose. Preparations for parenteral administration are only used initially and are therefore given the same DDD as oral preparations.

**C01BA *Antiarrhythmics, class Ia***

Combinations containing quinidine and verapamil are classified in C08DA.

**C01BB *Antiarrhythmics, class Ib***

Lidocaine used as a local anesthetic is classified in N01BB. Phenytoin, a class Ib antiarrhythmic, is classified as an antiepileptic in N03. Mexiletine indicated for myotonic disorders is classified here.

**C01BC *Antiarrhythmics, class Ic***

**C01BD *Antiarrhythmics, class III***

Sotalol, which has class III antiarrhythmic properties, is classified in C07AA.

The DDD for ibutilide refer to ibutilide fumarate.

**C01BG *Other antiarrhythmics, class I and III***

**C01C CARDIAC STIMULANTS EXCL. CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES**

This group comprises agents for the treatment of hypotension. Respiratory stimulants are classified in R07AB.

Dihydroergotamine, which is used in the treatment of migraine as well as hypotension, is classified in N02CA - *Ergot alkaloids*.

Combinations with peripheral vasodilators, see C04 - *Peripheral vasodilators*.

This group includes various drugs used on different indications. The DDDs are therefore established individually for each substance (i.e. each ATC 5th level).

**C01CA *Adrenergic and dopaminergic agents***

This group comprises sympathomimetics used in the treatment of hypotension.

Etilefrin in combination with dihydroergotamine is classified in this group.

Oral products of ephedrine are classified in R03CA.

**C01CE *Phosphodiesterase inhibitors***

Phosphodiesterase inhibitors such as theophylline, which are used in asthma therapy, are classified in R03D.

**C01CX *Other cardiac stimulants***

This group includes agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**C01D VASODILATORS USED IN CARDIAC DISEASES**

This group comprises preparations used in ischemic heart diseases. See also C02 - *Antihypertensives*, C03 - *Diuretics*, C04 - *Peripheral vasodilators*, C07 - *Beta blocking agents*, C08 - *Calcium channel blockers* and C09 - *Agents acting on the renin-angiotensin system*.

Combinations with cardiac glycosides, see C01A.

Combinations with rauwolfia alkaloids, see C02AA.

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see C07.

Combinations with calcium channel blockers, see C08.

**C01DA *Organic nitrates***

This group comprises nitrates used on the indication angina pectoris, including transdermal preparations. Amyl nitrite is classified in V03AB - *Antidotes*.

Combinations of isosorbide dinitrate and hydralazine are classified in C01DA58.

All nitrate preparations in combination with psycholeptics are classified in C01DA70. Nitrates in combination with psycholeptics and other agents are also given the code C01DA70.



The DDDs for the nitrates are mainly based on the treatment of angina pectoris attacks (3-4 times daily). The DDDs of preparations for oral and transdermal administration are higher than the DDDs for other routes of administration (e.g. sublingual) due to a lower bioavailability.

The DDDs for some preparations are mainly based on prophylaxis, for instance the DDDs of isosorbide dinitrate and glyceryl trinitrate plaster.

No DDDs are established for parenteral preparations due to great differences in the dosages used.

**C01DB** *Quinolone vasodilators*

**C01DX** *Other vasodilators used in cardiac diseases*

This group comprises vasodilators used in cardiac diseases, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**C01E** OTHER CARDIAC PREPARATIONS

This group comprises various preparations used in the treatment of ischemic heart diseases, which cannot be classified in any of the preceding groups.

**C01EA** *Prostaglandins*

This group comprises e.g. alprostadil. Specific formulations of alprostadil for treatment of erectile dysfunction are classified in G04BE01.

The DDD for alprostadil equals the content of active substance in one ampoule.

**C01EB** *Other cardiac preparations*

This group comprises plain products used in the treatment of ischemic heart diseases, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Adenosine, which is also used as an antiarrhythmic, is classified here. Antiarrhythmics, see C01B.

Combinations of ivabradine and beta blocking agents are classified in C07FX.

Other cardiovascular agents which cannot be classified in ATC group C02-C09 are also classified here.

Products containing indometacin or ibuprofen, which are only used for closing the ductus arteriosus in premature infants, are classified here. Indometacin used as an antiinflammatory agent is classified in M01AB01 or S01BC01.

The DDD for ibuprofen is based on the course dose.

### **C01EX** *Other cardiac combination products*

This group comprises combined preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

## **C02** **ANTIHYPERTENSIVES**

See also C03 - *Diuretics*, C07 - *Beta blocking agents*, C08 - *Calcium channel blockers* and C09 - *Agents acting on the renin-angiotensin system*.

Antihypertensives are mainly classified at 3rd levels according to the mechanism of action. Most headings are self-explanatory:

C02A *Antiadrenergic agents, centrally acting*

C02B *Antiadrenergic agents, ganglion-blocking*

C02C *Antiadrenergic agents, peripherally acting*

C02D *Arteriolar smooth muscle, agents acting on*

C02K *Other antihypertensives*

C02L *Antihypertensives and diuretics in combination*

C02N *Combinations of antihypertensives in ATC gr. C02*

The oral DDDs are based on the average doses needed to reduce the blood pressure to a normal level in patients with mild-moderate hypertension.

Parenteral DDDs are based on dosages used for the treatment of hypertensive crises and are based on the content of the active ingredient pr. vial (ampoule).

### **C02A** ANTIADRENERGIC AGENTS, CENTRALLY ACTING

#### **C02AA** *Rauwolfia alkaloids*

This group comprises plain and combined rauwolfia preparations used in hypertension.

There are separate 5th levels for combinations of rauwolfia alkaloids (C02AA03) and for rauwolfia, whole root (C02AA04).

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see C07F - *Beta blocking agents, other combinations*.

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LA - *Rauwolfia alkaloids and diuretics in combination*.

Combinations with other antihypertensives, see C02N - *Combinations of antihypertensives*.

Combined products are otherwise classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

**C02AB** *Methyldopa*

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LB - *Methyldopa and diuretics in combination*.

Combinations with Rauwolfia alkaloids and diuretics, see C02LA - *Rauwolfia alkaloids and diuretics in combination*.

Different DDDs have been established for the various stereoisomeric forms of methyldopa, because of different potency.

**C02AC** *Imidazoline receptor agonists*

Clonidine and guanfacine also used in ADHD are classified in this group.

Low strength clonidine preparations used in the treatment of migraine are classified in N02C - *Antimigraine preparations*.

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LC - *Imidazoline receptor agonists in combination with diuretics*.

C02B ANTIADRENERGIC AGENTS, GANGLION-BLOCKING

**C02BA** *Sulfonium derivatives*

**C02BB** *Secondary and tertiary amines*

**C02BC** *Bisquaternary ammonium compounds*

C02C ANTIADRENERGIC AGENTS, PERIPHERALLY ACTING

Alpha- and beta-blocking agents, see C07AG.

**C02CA** *Alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists*

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LE - *Alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists and diuretics*.

Alfuzosin and terazosin are classified in G04CA.

**C02CC** *Guanidine derivatives*

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LF - *Guanidine derivatives and diuretics*.

C02D ARTERIOLAR SMOOTH MUSCLE, AGENTS ACTING ON

See also C08 - *Calcium channel blockers*.

**C02DA *Thiazide derivatives***

Parenteral preparations of diazoxide are classified here.

Oral preparations containing diazoxide for treatment of hypoglycemia are classified in V03AH.

**C02DB *Hydrazinophthalazine derivatives***

Combinations with diuretics, see C02LG - *Hydrazinophthalazine derivatives and diuretics*.

Combinations of isosorbide dinitrate and hydralazine are classified in C01DA - *Organic nitrates*.

The oral DDD of dihydralazine is higher than the parenteral DDD. The parenteral DDD is given as the chloride salt while the oral DDD is given as the mesylate salt.

**C02DC *Pyrimidine derivatives***

Minoxidil for systemic use is classified here.

Dermatological preparations containing minoxidil are classified in D11AX.

**C02DD *Nitroferricyanide derivatives***

**C02DG *Guanidine derivatives***

C02K OTHER ANTIHYPERTENSIVES

This group comprises all antihypertensives which cannot be classified in groups C02A-D, C02L, C02N, C03 - *Diuretics*, C07 - *Beta blocking agents*, C08 - *Calcium channel blockers* or C09 - *Agents acting on the renin-angiotensin system*.

**C02KA *Alkaloids, excl. rauwolfia***

**C02KB *Tyrosine hydroxylase inhibitors***

**C02KC *MAO inhibitors***

**C02KD *Serotonin antagonists***

## **C02KX    *Antihypertensives for pulmonary arterial hypertension***

All agents classified in this group are for treatment of pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH).

Other agents used for treatment of PAH such as phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g. sildenafil) or prostaglandins (e.g. epoprostenol) are classified in G04BE and in B01AC respectively.

The DDDs are based on treatment of pulmonary arterial hypertension.

## **C02L    ANTIHYPERTENSIVES AND DIURETICS IN COMBINATION**

All substances classified in groups C02A-K, in combination with diuretics are classified in this group. At each 5th level, various combinations containing e.g. different diuretics, other antihypertensives or potassium may occur.

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see comments under C07.

Diuretics in combination with calcium channel blockers are classified in C08.

Diuretics in combination with ACE inhibitors, are classified in C09BA.

Diuretics in combination with angiotensin II reseptor blockers (ARBs) are classified in C09DA.

The need for a systematic approach to classify combinations of different antihypertensives has resulted in a ranking according to the ATC codes. Substances classified in ATC group C02AA take precedence over C02AB and substances in C02A take precedence over C02B etc.

Example: A combined preparation containing bietaserpine, hydralazine and hydrochlorothiazide will be given the code C02LA07 according to the above mentioned ranking.

Combinations with psycholeptics are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 70-series.

It has been considered most appropriate to assign fixed DDDs based on the average use of the different combinations without considering and comparing the strengths of the various components. 1 tablet is the fixed DDD for products given once daily whereas the fixed DDD for products given twice daily and three times daily is respectively 2 tablets and 3 tablets. The assigned DDDs cannot always be compared with the DDDs assigned for plain preparations.

- C02LA**    *Rauwolfia alkaloids and diuretics in combination*
- C02LB**    *Methyldopa and diuretics in combination*
- C02LC**    *Imidazoline receptor agonists in combination with diuretics*
- C02LE**    *Alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists and diuretics*
- C02LF**    *Guanidine derivatives and diuretics*
- C02LG**    *Hydrazinophthalazine derivatives and diuretics*
- C02LK**    *Alkaloids, excl. rauwolfia, in combination with diuretics*
- C02LL**    *MAO inhibitors and diuretics*
- C02LN**    *Serotonin antagonists and diuretics*
- C02LX**    *Other antihypertensives and diuretics*

**C02N**    COMBINATIONS OF ANTIHYPERTENSIVES IN ATC-GR. C02

Comprises combinations of different antihypertensives classified in ATC-gr. C02.

Antihypertensives in combination with diuretics are classified in C02L - *Antihypertensives and diuretics in combination*.

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see C07F - *Beta blocking agents, other combinations*.

The DDDs for fixed combinations are commented in C02L.

**C03**    **DIURETICS**

This group comprises diuretics, plain and in combination with potassium or other agents. Vasopressin antagonists are also included in this group. Potassium-sparing agents are classified in C03D and C03E.

Combinations with digitalis glycosides, see C01AA.

Combinations with antihypertensives, see C02L - *Antihypertensives and diuretics in combination*.

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see C07B - C07D.

Combinations with calcium channel blockers, see C08.

Combinations with agents acting on the renin angiotensin system, see C09B and C09D.

The DDDs for diuretics are based on monotherapy. Most diuretics are used both for the treatment of edema and hypertension in similar doses and the DDDs are therefore based on both indications.

The DDDs for combinations correspond to the DDD for the diuretic component, except for ATC group C03E, see comments under this level.

**C03A** LOW-CEILING DIURETICS, THIAZIDES

Combinations with potassium-sparing agents, see C03EA.

The different lipid solubility of the thiazides should be considered when assigning DDDs.

**C03AA** *Thiazides, plain*

**C03AB** *Thiazides and potassium in combination*

The 5th levels correspond to those in C03AA:

C03AA01 - *bendroflumethiazide*

C03AB01 - *bendroflumethiazide and potassium*

**C03AH** *Thiazides, combinations with psycholeptics and/or analgesics*

**C03AX** *Thiazides, combinations with other drugs*

**C03B** LOW-CEILING DIURETICS, EXCL. THIAZIDES

This group comprises all low-ceiling diuretics not classified in C03A.

Combinations with potassium-sparing agents, see C03EA.

**C03BA** *Sulfonamides, plain*

**C03BB** *Sulfonamides and potassium in combination*

The 5th levels correspond to those in C03BA, see example in C03AB.

**C03BC** *Mercurial diuretics*

**C03BD** *Xanthine derivatives*

Includes e.g. theobromine. See also R03DA - *Xanthines*.

**C03BK** *Sulfonamides, combinations with other drugs*

Includes e.g. combination with psycholeptics.

**C03BX** *Other low-ceiling diuretics*

All low-ceiling diuretics which cannot be classified in the preceding groups are classified here.

**C03C** HIGH-CEILING DIURETICS

This group comprises high-ceiling diuretics (loop-diuretics) e.g. furosemide.

Combinations with potassium-sparing agents, see C03EB.

**C03CA** *Sulfonamides, plain*

**C03CB** *Sulfonamides and potassium in combination*

The 5th levels correspond to those in C03CA. See example in C03AB.

**C03CC** *Aryloxyacetic acid derivatives*

**C03CD** *Pyrazolone derivatives*

**C03CX** *Other high-ceiling diuretics*

All high-ceiling diuretics which cannot be classified in the preceding groups are classified here.

**C03D** ALDOSTERONE ANTAGONISTS AND OTHER POTASSIUM-SPARING AGENTS

**C03DA** *Aldosterone antagonists*

Finerenone indicated for chronic kidney disease is classified in this group.

**C03DB** *Other potassium-sparing agents*

**C03E** DIURETICS AND POTASSIUM-SPARING AGENTS IN COMBINATION

Fixed DDDs are assigned for combinations in this group.

E.g. 1 tablet regardless of strengths is the DDD assigned for hydrochlorothiazide and amiloride in combinations. See comments to C02L also.

**C03EA** *Low-ceiling diuretics and potassium-sparing agents*

**C03EB** *High-ceiling diuretics and potassium-sparing agents*

**C03X** OTHER DIURETICS

**C03XA** *Vasopressin antagonists*



**C04 PERIPHERAL VASODILATORS**

**C04A PERIPHERAL VASODILATORS**

This group comprises plain and combined preparations used in the treatment of cerebrovascular or peripheral circulatory disorders.

Combinations with Antihypertensives, see C02 - *Antihypertensives*.

Combinations with vasodilators used in cardiac diseases, see C01DA.

The DDDs are based on the doses used for the treatment of cerebral and peripheral vascular disorders.

**C04AA *2-amino-1-phenylethanol derivatives***

**C04AB *Imidazoline derivatives***

**C04AC *Nicotinic acid and derivatives***

Includes low strength preparations (e.g. nicotinic acid tablets 50 mg). Nicotinic acid preparations in high strength (e.g. nicotinic acid tablets 500 mg) is used as a cholesterol reducer and is classified in C10AD.

**C04AD *Purine derivatives***

Combinations with nicotinic acid and derivatives are allowed at each 5th level.

**C04AE *Ergot alkaloids***

Includes combinations with other peripheral vasodilators.

Combinations with calcium channel blockers are classified in C08CA.

Combinations of cinnarizine and dihydroergcristine are classified in N07CA52.

See also G02AB and N02CA.

**C04AF *Enzymes***

**C04AX *Other peripheral vasodilators***

Betahistine, cinnarizine and flunarizine are classified as antivertigo preparations in N07CA.

Papaverine preparations, see A03AD and G04BE.

## **C05 VASOPROTECTIVES**

No DDDs are established in this group, since most of the drugs in this group are for topical use.

### **C05A AGENTS FOR TREATMENT OF HEMORRHOIDS AND ANAL FISSURES FOR TOPICAL USE**

This group comprises agents for local use, such as suppositories, ointments etc. Preparations used for treatment of perineal trauma are classified here.

#### **C05AA *Corticosteroids***

All antihemorrhoidal products, which contain corticosteroids, are classified in this group, including both plain products and combinations with antiinfectives, local anesthetics etc. At each 5th plain level, combinations may occur.

#### **C05AB *Antibiotics***

All antihemorrhoidal products which contain antibiotics, excl. combinations with corticosteroids, are classified in this group.

#### **C05AD *Local anesthetics***

All antihemorrhoidal products which contain anesthetics, excl. combinations with corticosteroids and/or antibiotics, are classified in this group. At each 5th plain level, combinations may occur.

See also D04AB - *Anesthetics for topical use* and N01B - *Local anesthetics*.

#### **C05AE *Muscle relaxants***

Topical products containing glyceryl trinitrate or isosorbide dinitrate are classified in this group.

#### **C05AX *Other agents for treatment of hemorrhoids and anal fissures for topical use***

Agents which cannot be classified in the preceding groups are classified in this group, e.g. bismuth/zinc oxide-preparations.

### **C05B ANTIVARICOSE THERAPY**

This group comprises all products for treatment of varices, i.v. infusion induced thrombophlebitis etc.

Zinc bandages, see D09A - *Medicated dressings*.

**C05BA** *Heparins or heparinoids for topical use*

Heparin in combination with e.g. dexpanthenol and allantoin is classified in C05BA53.

Heparin in combination with diclofenac for topical use is classified in M02AA15.

Heparinoids in combination with calcium dobesilate are classified in C05BX - *Other sclerosing agents*.

**C05BB** *Sclerosing agents for local injection*

**C05BX** *Other sclerosing agents*

Combinations of calcium dobesilate and heparinoids are classified here.

**C05C** CAPILLARY STABILIZING AGENTS

**C05CA** *Bioflavonoids*

Rutoside is classified in this group.

Oxerutines are classified in C05CA54.

Combinations with other capillary stabilizing agents are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

**C05CX** *Other capillary stabilizing agents*

Lysine aescinate is classified in C05CX03.

**C07** BETA BLOCKING AGENTS

**C07A** BETA BLOCKING AGENTS

All plain beta blocking agents are classified in this group.

Labetalol, and carvedilol are classified in C07AG - *Alpha- and beta blocking agents*.

Beta blocking agents in combination with ACE inhibitors are classified in C09BX - *ACE inhibitors, other combinations*.

Beta blocking agents in combination with ARBs are classified in C09DX - *Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), other combinations*.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of mild-moderate hypertension. The DDDs for oral and parenteral formulations are equal, even if the parenteral preparations are used for the initial treatment of arrhythmias. Exception: practolol.

**C07AA *Beta blocking agents, non-selective***

All plain non-selective beta blocking agents are classified in this group.

**C07AB *Beta blocking agents, selective***

All plain selective beta blocking agents are classified in this group.

The s-enantiomer and the racemate of atenolol are classified at separate 5th levels.

Different DDDs have been assigned for the two stereoisomeric forms of atenolol due to different potency.

**C07AG *Alpha and beta blocking agents***

**C07B BETA BLOCKING AGENTS AND THIAZIDES**

This group comprises combinations of beta blocking agents and thiazides. Different thiazides may occur at each 5th level.

Combinations of beta blocking agents, thiazides and other agents are classified at separate 5th levels using the 50-series.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for the combined preparations.

**C07BA *Beta blocking agents, non-selective, and thiazides***

**C07BB *Beta blocking agents, selective, and thiazides***

**C07BG *Alpha and beta blocking agents and thiazides***

**C07C BETA BLOCKING AGENTS AND OTHER DIURETICS**

This group comprises combinations of beta blocking agents and diuretics excl. thiazides. Different diuretics except thiazides, may occur at each 5th level.

Combinations with other agents in addition, are classified at separate 5th levels using the 50-series.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for combined preparations.

**C07CA** *Beta blocking agents, non-selective, and other diuretics*

**C07CB** *Beta blocking agents, selective, and other diuretics*

**C07CG** *Alpha and beta blocking agents and other diuretics*

**C07D** BETA BLOCKING AGENTS, THIAZIDES AND OTHER DIURETICS

This group comprises combinations of beta blocking agents, thiazides and other diuretics. Different thiazides and diuretics may occur at each 5th level.

Combinations with other agents in addition, are classified at separate 5th levels using the 50-series.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for combined preparations.

**C07DA** *Beta blocking agents, non-selective, thiazides and other diuretics*

**C07DB** *Beta blocking agents, selective, thiazides and other diuretics*

**C07E** BETA BLOCKING AGENTS AND VASODILATORS

This group comprises beta blocking agents and vasodilators (excl. calcium channel blockers) in combination.

Combinations with calcium channel blockers are classified in C07F.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for combined preparations.

**C07EA** *Beta blocking agents, non-selective, and vasodilators*

**C07EB** *Beta blocking agents, selective, and vasodilators*

**C07F** BETA BLOCKING AGENTS, OTHER COMBINATIONS

Beta blocking agents in combination with ACE inhibitors are classified in C09BX - *ACE inhibitors, other combinations*.

Beta blocking agents in combination with ARBs are classified in C09DX - *Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), other combinations*.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for combined preparations.

**C07FB** *Beta blocking agents and calcium channel blockers*

**C07FX** *Beta blocking agents, other combinations*

Combinations of propranolol and hydralazine or dihydralazine are classified in C07FX01.

**C08** **CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS**

The calcium channel blockers are classified according to selectivity of calcium channel activity and direct cardiac effects. The ATC 4th levels are subdivided according to chemical structure.

Combinations with ergot alkaloids (C04AE) are classified in this group by using the 50-series.

Combinations with diuretics are classified in C08G.

Combinations with ACE inhibitors are classified in C09BB.

Combinations with beta blocking agents are classified in C07FB.

Combinations with statins are classified in C10BX.

The DDDs for calcium channel blockers are based on the treatment of mild-moderate hypertension, although some are used for other indications (e.g. angina pectoris).

The DDDs for oral and parenteral preparations are equal and are based on the oral dose, since oral preparations represent the major fraction of the total consumption.

**C08C** **SELECTIVE CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS WITH MAINLY VASCULAR EFFECTS**

**C08CA** *Dihydropyridine derivatives*

Preparations containing nifedipine in combination with ergot alkaloids are classified in C08CA55.

Combinations with diuretics are classified in C08G.

Amlodipine in combination with atorvastatin is classified in C10BX03.

**C08CX** *Other selective calcium channel blockers with mainly vascular effects*

C08D SELECTIVE CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS WITH DIRECT CARDIAC EFFECTS  
**C08DA** *Phenylalkylamine derivatives*

Combinations containing verapamil and quinidine are classified in C08DA51.

**C08DB** *Benzothiazepine derivatives*

C08E NON-SELECTIVE CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS

**C08EA** *Phenylalkylamine derivatives*

**C08EX** *Other non-selective calcium channel blockers*

C08G CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS AND DIURETICS

**C08GA** *Calcium channel blockers and diuretics*

**C09** **AGENTS ACTING ON THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN SYSTEM**

The DDDs are based on the treatment of mild-moderate hypertension.

See comments to C02L concerning the principles for assignment of DDDs for combined preparations.

C09A ACE INHIBITORS, PLAIN

All plain ACE inhibitors are classified in this group. No separate ATC codes are assigned for the active metabolites of the ACE inhibitors (e.g. enalaprilat, quinaprilat).

Combinations with diuretics, see C09BA - *ACE inhibitors and diuretics*.

Combinations with calcium channel blockers, see C09BB - *ACE inhibitors and calcium channel blockers*.

Combinations with beta blocking agents, see C09BX - *ACE inhibitors, other combinations*.

**C09AA** *ACE inhibitors, plain*

C09B ACE INHIBITORS, COMBINATIONS

Combinations of ACE inhibitors, statins and acetylsalicylic acid are classified in C10BX.

**C09BA** *ACE inhibitors and diuretics*

**C09BB** *ACE inhibitors and calcium channel blockers*

Combinations with statins are classified in C10BX.

**C09BX ACE inhibitors, other combinations**

Combinations with beta blocking agents are classified in this group.  
Combinations of ACE inhibitors, diuretics and calcium channel blockers are also classified in this group.

C09C ANGIOTENSIN II RECEPTOR BLOCKERS (ARBs), PLAIN

**C09CA Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), plain**

C09D ANGIOTENSIN II RECEPTOR BLOCKERS (ARBs), COMBINATIONS

Combinations with statins are classified in C10BX.

**C09DA Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs) and diuretics**

**C09DB Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs) and calcium channel blockers**

Combinations with hydrochlorothiazide are classified in C09DX.

**C09DX Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), other combinations**

C09X OTHER AGENTS ACTING ON THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN SYSTEM

**C09XA Renin-inhibitors**

Fixed combinations of aliskiren and valsartan are classified in C09DX.

**C10 LIPID MODIFYING AGENTS**

The DDDs are based on the treatment of hypercholesterolemia.

C10A LIPID MODIFYING AGENTS, PLAIN

Pantethine, which is also used in the treatment of hyperlipidemi, is classified as a vitamin in A11HA.

**C10AA HMG CoA reductase inhibitors**

This group comprises agents which act as competitive inhibitors of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase (HMG CoA reductase).

Atorvastatin in combination with amlodipine is classified in C10BX03.

**C10AB Fibrates**

Clofibrate and analogues are classified here.

The DDD for fenofibrate is based on the micronised formulation.



**C10AC** *Bile acid sequestrants*

This group comprises substances (such as colestyramine and colestipol) which reduces the cholesterol level by increasing the excretion of bile acid.

**C10AD** *Nicotinic acid and derivatives*

This group comprises high strength preparations (e.g. nicotinic acid tab 500 mg) used as cholesterol reducers. Nicotinic acid or derivatives in low strength preparations (e.g. nicotinic acid tab 50 mg) are classified in C04A - *Peripheral vasodilators*.

Combinations of nicotinic acid and laropiprant are classified in C10AD52.

**C10AX** *Other lipid modifying agents*

This group comprises all cholesterol and triglyceride reducers, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Icosapent ethyl is classified in C10AX06 - *omega-3-triglycerides incl. other esters and acids*.

Sulodexide is classified in B01AB.

The DDD for evolocumab is based on dosing every second week.  
The DDD for volanesorsen is based on the treatment of familial chylomicronemia syndrome.

**C10B** LIPID MODIFYING AGENTS, COMBINATIONS

Fixed combinations of blood glucose-lowering drugs and lipid modifying agents are classified in A10B.

For fixed combinations in C10B the DDD is based on dosing frequency only. This implies that 1 UD (1 tablet) is the DDD for all products given once daily and the DDD for products given twice daily and three times daily is 2 UD (2 tablets) and 3 UD (3 tablets) respectively.

**C10BA** *Combinations of various lipid modifying agents*

**C10BX** *Lipid modifying agents in combination with other drugs*

This group comprises products which contain lipid modifying agents (including combinations of various lipid modifying agents) in combination with other substances.

Combinations with e.g. ACE inhibitors, angiotensin II antagonists, calcium channel blockers or diuretics are classified in C10BX.

## **D DERMATOLOGICALS**

### **D01 ANTIFUNGALS FOR DERMATOLOGICAL USE**

- A *Antifungals for topical use*
- B *Antifungals for systemic use*

### **D02 EMOLLIENTS AND PROTECTIVES**

- A *Emollients and protectives*
- B *Protectives against UV-radiation*

### **D03 PREPARATIONS FOR TREATMENT OF WOUNDS AND ULCERS**

- A *Cicatrizants*
- B *Enzymes*

### **D04 ANTIPRURITICS, INCL. ANTIHISTAMINES, ANESTHETICS, ETC.**

- A *Antipruritics, incl. antihistamines, anesthetics, etc.*

### **D05 ANTIPSORIATICS**

- A *Antipsoriatics for topical use*
- B *Antipsoriatics for systemic use*

### **D06 ANTIBIOTICS AND CHEMOTHERAPEUTICS FOR DERMATOLOGICAL USE**

- A *Antibiotics for topical use*
- B *Chemotherapeutics for topical use*
- C *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics, combinations*

### **D07 CORTICOSTEROIDS, DERMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

- A *Corticosteroids, plain*
- B *Corticosteroids, combinations with antiseptics*
- C *Corticosteroids, combinations with antibiotics*
- X *Corticosteroids, other combinations*

### **D08 ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS**

- A *Antiseptics and disinfectants*

### **D09 MEDICATED DRESSINGS**

- A *Medicated dressings*

**D10 ANTI-ACNE PREPARATIONS**

A *Anti-acne preparations for topical use*

B *Anti-acne preparations for systemic use*

**D11 OTHER DERMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

A *Other dermatological preparations*

## D DERMATOLOGICALS

Most of the drugs in this group are preparations for topical use. Some few preparations for systemic use with clear dermatological applications, e.g. griseofulvin (antimycotic), retinoids (for treatment of acne) and psoralens and retinoids (for treatment of psoriasis) are classified in this group.

Only oral preparations in ATC group D are given DDDs. Most products in this group are for topical use, and no DDDs are assigned because the amount given per day can vary very much according to the intensity and distribution of the disease. Consumption figures for these dermatological preparations can be expressed in grams of preparations regardless of strength.

### D01 ANTIFUNGALS FOR DERMATOLOGICAL USE

This group comprises preparations for topical and systemic treatment of dermatological mycoses. Preparations with systemic antimycotic effect, see also J02A - *Antimycotics for systemic use*.

Topical preparations used especially in gynecological infections are classified in G01A - *Antiinfectives and antiseptics, excl. combinations with corticosteroids* or G01B - *Antiinfectives/antiseptics in combination with corticosteroids*. Preparations for local treatment of fungal infections in the mouth, see A01AB - *Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment*.

#### D01A ANTIFUNGALS FOR TOPICAL USE

Combined preparations are classified in this group if mycosis is the main indication.

##### **D01AA** *Antibiotics*

Preparations used in the treatment of bacterial dermatological infections, see D06A - *Antibiotics for topical use*.

##### **D01AC** *Imidazole and triazole derivatives*

Shampoos containing imidazoles are classified here. Topical metronidazole is mainly used in rosacea and is classified in D06BX - *Other chemotherapeutics*.

Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in D01AC20. All other combinations are classified by using the 50-series e.g. miconazole and zinc.

Combinations of imidazole and triazole derivatives, gentamicin and corticosteroids are classified in D07C - *Corticosteroids, combinations with antibiotics*.

**D01AE Other antifungals for topical use**

See also D08AH - *Quinoline derivatives*

Combined preparations containing salicylic acid, which are used as antifungals (e.g. dusting powders), are classified in this group in D01AE20. See also D02AF - *Salicylic acid preparations*.

Derivatives of undecylenic acid are classified in D01AE04.

**D01B ANTIFUNGALS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises preparations used in the systemic treatment of dermatological mycoses. See also J02A - *Antimycotics for systemic use*.

**D01BA Antifungals for systemic use**

The DDDs for griseofulvin and terbinafine are based on the treatment of dermatophyte infections in skin, hair or nails.

**D02 EMOLLIENTS AND PROTECTIVES**

**D02A EMOLLIENTS AND PROTECTIVES**

This group comprises all types of emollients and protectives with no specific therapeutic effect or use, and also preparations for use in wounds, which are not classified in D09 - *Medicated dressings*.

Some similar products are classified in D03A - *Cicatrizants*, e.g. cod-liver oil ointments.

**D02AA Silicone products**

**D02AB Zinc products**

**D02AC Soft paraffin and fat products**

Some similar products with a higher water content (creams) are classified in D02AX - *Other emollients and protectives*. Soft paraffin dressings, see D09AX.

**D02AD Liquid plasters**

Liquid plasters are classified in this group whereas non-medicated adhesive plasters, surgical tapes etc. are classified in V07AA.

**D02AE Carbamide products**

**D02AF Salicylic acid preparations**

Preparations containing salicylic acid used for the treatment of mycosis are classified in D01AE - *Other antifungals for topical use*.

Salicylic acid in combination with corticosteroids, see D07X.

Medicated shampoos containing salicylic acid are classified in D11AC30 - *others*.

Topical products for joint and muscular pain containing combinations with salicylic acid are classified in M02AC.

All other preparations containing salicylic acid, including anti-acne preparations, should be classified in this group.

**D02AX Other emollients and protectives**

Soft paraffin and fat products with high water content (creams) are classified in this group. See also D02AC - *Soft paraffin and fat products*.

Weak boric acid vaseline is classified here.

Other boric acid products are classified in D08AD.

**D02B PROTECTIVES AGAINST UV-RADIATION**

This group comprises special protectives against UV-radiation.

**D02BA Protectives against UV-radiation for topical use**

Derivatives may be included in each plain 5th level.

**D02BB Protectives against UV-radiation for systemic use**

The DDD of betacarotene is based on the treatment of patients with erythropoietic protoporphyria.

**D03 PREPARATIONS FOR TREATMENT OF WOUNDS AND ULCERS**

Topical preparations used in the treatment of wounds and ulcers, e.g. leg ulcers, are classified in this group. Protective ointments are classified in D02A - *Emollients and protectives*.

See also

D06 - *Antibiotic and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*.

D08 - *Antiseptics and disinfectants*.

D09 - *Medicated dressings*.

D03A CICATRIZANTS

Topical vitamin preparations etc. are classified in this group if they cannot be classified in other groups.

**D03AA Cod-liver oil ointments**

Includes cod-liver (vitamin A) ointments in combination with chlorhexidine.

**D03AX Other cicatrizants**

Includes e.g. dextranomer powders with or without antiseptics. See also D09A - *Medicated dressings*.

Medicated dressings containing hyaluronic acid are classified here.

Topical products containing glyceryl trinitrate or isosorbide dinitrate used for treatment of anal fissures are classified in C05AE.

D03B ENZYMES

Proteolytic enzymes for topical treatment of ulcers are classified here.

**D03BA Proteolytic enzymes**

**D04 ANTIPRURITICS, INCL. ANTIHISTAMINES, ANESTHETICS, ETC.**

D04A ANTIPRURITICS, INCL. ANTIHISTAMINES, ANESTHETICS, ETC.

This group comprises antipruritics for topical use in the treatment of pruritus, minor burns, insect stings, herpes zoster etc.

See also D07 - *Corticosteroids, dermatological preparations*.

**D04AA Antihistamines for topical use**

At each 5th level, antiseptics, sicccants etc. may occur in combination with the antihistamines. Combinations with corticosteroids, see

D07 - *Corticosteroids, dermatological preparations*.

Combinations with anesthetics are classified in D04AB.

Combinations of diphenhydramine and diethyltoluamid are classified at the plain level for diphenhydramine in D04AA.

**D04AB    *Anesthetics for topical use***

At each 5th plain level, antiseptics, siccants etc. may occur in combination with the anesthetics. Combinations with corticosteroids, see D07 - *Corticosteroids, dermatological preparations*.

Combinations with antihistamines are classified in D04AB at the corresponding plain 5th level.

See also C05A - *Agents for treatment of hemorrhoids and anal fissures for topical use*, and N01B - *Anesthetics, local*.

**D04AX    *Other antipruritics***

This group comprises ointments, creams, liniments etc. containing e.g. camphora, menthol, calamine. Crotamiton is classified here. When classifying products in this group, alternative groups should be considered, e.g.:

D02 - *Emollients and protectives*

D08 - *Antiseptics and disinfectants*

M02- *Topical products for joint and muscular pain*

Nalfurafine and difelikefalin indicated for pruritus in chronic kidney disease are classified in V03AX *Other therapeutic products*.

**D05        **ANTIPSORIATICS****

**D05A        ANTIPSORIATICS FOR TOPICAL USE**

This group comprises products for topical use mainly for the treatment of psoriasis. Corticosteroids for topical use are classified in D07 - *Corticosteroids, dermatological preparations*.

**D05AA     *Tars***

All tar preparations for dermatological use are classified in this group, except for combinations with corticosteroids.

**D05AC     *Antracene derivatives***

**D05AD     *Psoralens for topical use***

**D05AX     *Other antipsoriatics for topical use***

Corticosteroids in combination with vitamin D analogues indicated only for the treatment of psoriasis are classified in D05AX.



## D05B ANTIPSORIATICS FOR SYSTEMIC USE

This group comprises drugs for systemic use against psoriasis. Antineoplastic agents, sometimes used in severe psoriasis, are classified in group L - *Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents*.

Agents with immunosuppressant properties indicated for treatment of psoriasis are classified in L04 - *Immunosuppressants*.

### **D05BA** *Psoralens for systemic use*

Methoxsalen used in extracorporeal photopheresis systems is also classified here.

The DDDs for psoralens for systemic use are based on the combined treatment with drug and UV-A irradiation.

### **D05BB** *Retinoids for treatment of psoriasis*

Retinoids for the treatment of acne are classified in D10BA.

Alitretinoin used for hand eczema is classified in D11A.

### **D05BX** *Other antipsoriatics for systemic use*

Alefacept and efalizumab are classified in L04AA.

Dimethyl fumarate indicated for plaque psoriasis or multiple sclerosis is classified in L04AX.

## D06 ANTIBIOTICS AND CHEMOTHERAPEUTICS FOR DERMATOLOGICAL USE

This group comprises products for topical use in skin infections etc.

*Antimicrobial* chemotherapeutics are classified here, while *antineoplastic* chemotherapeutics are classified in L01.

## D06A ANTIBIOTICS FOR TOPICAL USE

This group comprises antibiotics for dermatological use, except

Antibiotics with antimycotic properties - D01A

Combinations with chemotherapeutics - D06C

Combinations with corticosteroids - D07C

Antiinfectives for treatment of acne - D10AF

**D06AA Tetracycline and derivatives**

Combined preparations, which contain oxytetracycline and other antibiotics, are classified in D06AA03 - *oxytetracycline*.

**D06AX Other antibiotics for topical use**

Combined preparations which contain neomycin and other antibiotics (e.g. bacitracin) are classified in D06AX04 - *neomycin*. Combinations with local anesthetics are also included in this code.

Combined preparations containing bacitracin and chlorhexidine or polymyxin B are classified in D06AX05 - *bacitracin*.

**D06B CHEMOTHERAPEUTICS FOR TOPICAL USE**

This group includes antimicrobial chemotherapeutics for dermatological use, except:

Combinations with antibiotics - D06C

Combinations with corticosteroids - D07C

Antineoplastic chemotherapeutics are classified in L01 - *Antineoplastic agents*.

**D06BA Sulfonamides**

**D06BB Antivirals**

This group includes both direct acting antivirals and other agents for viral diseases.

Mucoadhesive formulations of aciclovir are classified in J05AB01.

Podophyllin preparations are classified at the 5th level for podophyllotoxin.

**D06BX Other chemotherapeutics**

This group comprises chemotherapeutics used in different skin disorders, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups, e.g. metronidazole for the treatment of rosacea.

Some agents used in the treatment of actinic keratosis are also classified here. Other agents used in this indication are classified in D06BB - *Antivirals*, D11AX - *Other dermatologicals*, L01BC - *Pyrimidine analogues* and L01XD - *Sensitizers in photo-/radiotherapy*.

D06C ANTIBIOTICS AND CHEMOTHERAPEUTICS, COMBINATIONS

**D07 CORTICOSTEROIDS, DERMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

As a main rule, all topical corticosteroid preparations should be classified in this group. There are, however, some few exceptions:

Combinations of corticosteroids and antiinfectives for gynaecological use, see G01B.

Corticosteroids for local oral treatment, see A01AC.

Corticosteroids in combination with antifungals are classified in D01A.

Anti-acne preparations, see D10A.

Antihemorrhoidals with corticosteroids, see C05AA.

Corticosteroids for ophthalmological or otological use, see S - *Sensory organs*.

D07A CORTICOSTEROIDS, PLAIN

The group is subdivided according to clinical potency of the steroids as such. Additional agents meant to enhance the penetration and increase the potency of the product do not influence the classification, neither do the strength of the preparations or the vehicle.

**D07AA *Corticosteroids, weak (group I)***

**D07AB *Corticosteroids, moderately potent (group II)***

**D07AC *Corticosteroids, potent (group III)***

**D07AD *Corticosteroids, very potent (group IV)***

D07B CORTICOSTEROIDS, COMBINATIONS WITH ANTISEPTICS

This group comprises combined corticosteroid/antiseptic preparations for dermatological use.

Antifungal preparations with corticosteroids are classified in D01A - *Antifungals for topical use*. Corticosteroids, antiseptics and salicylic acid in combination are classified in D07X.

The group is subdivided according to clinical potency, see D07A. Exceptions, see D07. At each 5th level various antiseptics may occur.

**D07BA *Corticosteroids, weak, combinations with antiseptics***

**D07BB** *Corticosteroids, moderately potent, combinations with antiseptics*

**D07BC** *Corticosteroids, potent, combinations with antiseptics*

**D07BD** *Corticosteroids, very potent, combinations with antiseptics*

**D07C** CORTICOSTEROIDS, COMBINATIONS WITH ANTIBIOTICS

This group comprises combined corticosteroid/antibiotic preparations for dermatological use. The group is subdivided according to clinical potency, see D07A. Exceptions, see D07.

At each 5th level various antibiotics may occur.

Combinations of corticosteroids, gentamicin and imidazole and triazole derivatives are classified here. Combinations of corticosteroids and imidazole and triazole derivatives are classified in D01AC - *Imidazole and triazole derivatives*.

**D07CA** *Corticosteroids, weak, combinations with antibiotics*

**D07CB** *Corticosteroids, moderately potent, combinations with antibiotics*

**D07CC** *Corticosteroids, potent, combinations with antibiotics*

**D07CD** *Corticosteroids, very potent, combinations with antibiotics*

**D07X** CORTICOSTEROIDS, OTHER COMBINATIONS

This group comprises most other combined corticosteroid preparations for dermatological use, e.g. combinations with coal tar, carbamide and salicylic acid. Salicylic acid is regarded as a keratolytic agent.

Preparations with salicylic acid and antiseptics are classified in this group, as salicylic acid is regarded as being more important than the antiseptics for the therapeutic use of these products (psoriasis, seborrhea).

The group is subdivided according to clinical potency, see D07A.

Exceptions, see D07.

Corticosteroids in combination with antifungals are classified in D01A.

**D07XA** *Corticosteroids, weak, other combinations*

**D07XB** *Corticosteroids, moderately potent, other combinations*

**D07XC** *Corticosteroids, potent, other combinations*

**D07XD** *Corticosteroids, very potent, other combinations*

## **D08 ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS**

### **D08A ANTISEPTICS AND DISINFECTANTS**

This group comprises all dermatological antiinfective preparations, which are not classified in any of the following groups:

- D01 - *Antifungals for dermatological use*
- D03A - *Cicatrizants*
- D06 - *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*
- D07B - *Corticosteroids, combinations with antiseptics*
- D07X - *Corticosteroids, other combinations*
- D09A - *Medicated dressings*
- D10A - *Anti-acne preparations for topical use*
- D11AC - *Medicated shampoos*
- P03A - *Ectoparasitocides, incl. scabicides*

Antiviral agents, see D06BB.

Non-therapeutic auxiliary products, such as exploration creams and lubricants, are classified in V07AY. Lubricants, which contain antiseptics, are, however, classified in this group.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

At each 5th plain level combinations with alcohols are allowed.

#### **D08AA *Acridine derivatives***

#### **D08AB *Aluminium agents***

Combinations with quarternary ammonium compounds are classified in D08AJ.

#### **D08AC *Biguanides and amidines***

#### **D08AD *Boric acid products***

Weak boric acid vaseline is classified in D02AX.

#### **D08AE *Phenol and derivatives***

Each 5th level also allows combinations with alcohol.

#### **D08AF *Nitrofurane derivatives***

#### **D08AG *Iodine products***

See also D03AX and D09AA. Cadexomer iodine is classified in D03AX. Medicated dressings containing iodine are classified in D09AA.

**D08AH** *Quinoline derivatives*

Chloroquinaldol and clioquinol are classified in this group and not in D01 - *Antifungals for dermatological use*.

Chloroquinaldol and clioquinol for systemic use are classified in P01AA - *Hydroxyquinoline derivatives*.

**D08AJ** *Quaternary ammonium compounds*

Combinations with aluminium agents are classified here.

**D08AK** *Mercurial products*

Combined products, which also contain silver compounds, are classified in this group.

**D08AL** *Silver compounds*

Combined products, which also contain mercury compounds, see D08AK.

**D08AX** *Other antiseptics and disinfectants*

Hydrogenperoxide  $\geq 40\%$  solutions used in the treatment of seborrheic keratosis or warts are classified in D11AX.

**D09** **MEDICATED DRESSINGS**

D09A MEDICATED DRESSINGS

This group comprises medicated dressings, ointment dressings etc. Liquid wound protectives are classified in D02AD - *Liquid plasters*. Local hemostatics, e.g. gauze, tampons etc. are classified in B02BC - *Local hemostatics*. Medicated dressings containing hyaluronic acid are classified in D03AX - *Other cicatrizants*.

**D09AA** *Medicated dressings with antiinfectives*

See also D03AX and D08AG. Products containing cadexomer iodine are classified in D03AX.

**D09AB** *Zinc bandages*

Zinc bandages with or without supplements are classified in this group.

**D09AX** *Soft paraffin dressings*

Dressings with antiinfectives, see D09AA.

Dressings with scarlet red are classified in this group.

## **D10 ANTI-ACNE PREPARATIONS**

The DDDs are based on the treatment of severe acne.

### **D10A ANTI-ACNE PREPARATIONS FOR TOPICAL USE**

This group comprises all topical preparations used specifically in the treatment of acne, incl. preparations with antibiotics, corticosteroids etc.

#### **D10AA *Corticosteroids, combinations for treatment of acne***

Only combined corticosteroid preparations specifically used in the treatment of acne are classified in this group. Other dermatological corticosteroid preparations are classified in D07 - *Corticosteroids, dermatological preparations*.

Combinations with retinoids are classified in D10AD.

Combinations with peroxides are classified in D10AE.

#### **D10AB *Preparations containing sulfur***

Preparations, which contain sulfur in addition to a sulfur derivative, should be classified at the 5th level of the derivative.

The products may contain other active ingredients such as resorcinol.

#### **D10AD *Retinoids for topical use in acne***

All retinoids for topical use are classified in D10AD, including combinations with antibacterials.

#### **D10AE *Peroxides***

Combinations with antiinfectives are classified in D10AF.

#### **D10AF *Antiinfectives for treatment of acne***

This group comprises mainly antibiotics for topical use with acne as the main indication. Minocycline also indicated for the treatment of rosacea is classified in this group.

Topical antiinfectives with other main indications are classified in D06 - *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*.

Combinations with retinoids are classified in D10AD.

#### **D10AX *Other anti-acne preparations for topical use***

**D10B ANTI-ACNE PREPARATIONS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises drugs for systemic use in the treatment of acne. Antibiotics, such as tetracyclines and erythromycin, which are also used for the treatment of acne, are classified in group J.

Combinations of e.g. estrogen and antiandrogen, used for the treatment of acne, are classified in group G03 - *Sex hormones and modulators of the genital system*.

**D10BA Retinoids for treatment of acne**

Retinoids used in severe psoriasis are classified in D05BB, whereas alitretinoin used for hand eczema is classified in D11A.

**D10BX Other anti-acne preparations for systemic use**

Ichtamol preparations for systemic use in treatment of acne are classified in this group.

**D11 OTHER DERMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

**D11A OTHER DERMATOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

This group comprises various dermatological preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Insect repellents are classified in P03B - *Insecticides and repellents*.

**D11AA Antihidrotics**

Glycopyrronium for topical use is classified here. Glycopyrronium bromide for systemic use is classified in A03AB

**D11AC Medicated shampoos**

Shampoos containing imidazoles are classified in D01AC.

Shampoos containing coal tar are classified in D05AA.

**D11AE Androgens for topical use**

**D11AF Wart and anti-corn preparations**

Preparations such as keratolytics for the treatment of common warts and cornified lesions are classified in this group.

Podophyllotoxin/podophyllin e.g. for the treatment of genital warts, is classified in D06BB.

Hydrogenperoxide  $\geq 40\%$  solutions used in the treatment of seborrheic keratosis or warts are classified in D11AX.



**D11AH Agents for dermatitis, excluding corticosteroids**

This group includes agents used for atopic dermatitis or eczema.

Corticosteroides, see D07.

**D11AX Other dermatologicals**

This group comprises products, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. E.g. minoxidil for the treatment of male pattern baldness is classified here.

Lithium succinate in combination with other substances, e. g. zinc sulphate is classified in D11AX04 - *lithium succinate*.

Diclofenac formulated as a 3% hyaluronic acid gel used in treatment of actinic keratoses is classified here.

Hydrogenperoxide  $\geq 40\%$  solutions used in the treatment of seborrheic keratosis or warts are classified here, while low strength solutions are classified in D08AX.

## **G GENITO URINARY SYSTEM AND SEX HORMONES**

### **G01 GYNECOLOGICAL ANTIINFECTIVES AND ANTISEPTICS**

- A Antiinfectives and antiseptics, excl. combinations with corticosteroids*
- B Antiinfectives/antiseptics in combination with corticosteroids*

### **G02 OTHER GYNECOLOGICALS**

- A Uterotonics*
- B Contraceptives for topical use*
- C Other gynecologicals*

### **G03 SEX HORMONES AND MODULATORS OF THE GENITAL SYSTEM**

- A Hormonal contraceptives for systemic use*
- B Androgens*
- C Estrogens*
- D Progestogens*
- E Androgens and female sex hormones in combination*
- F Progestogens and estrogens in combination*
- G Gonadotropins and other ovulation stimulants*
- H Antiandrogens*
- X Other sex hormones and modulators of the genital system*

### **G04 UROLOGICALS**

- B Urologicals*
- C Drugs used in benign prostatic hypertrophy*

**G GENITO URINARY SYSTEM AND SEX HORMONES**  
**G01 GYNECOLOGICAL ANTIINFECTIVES AND ANTISEPTICS**

This group comprises gynecological antiinfectives and antiseptics mainly for local use. See also:

J - *Antiinfectives for systemic use*

D06 - *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*

P01AB - *Nitroimidazole derivatives*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of vaginal infections.

**G01A ANTIINFECTIVES AND ANTISEPTICS, EXCL. COMBINATIONS WITH CORTICOSTEROIDS**

This group comprises preparations, mainly for local use.

Combinations with corticosteroids, see G01B.

Antivirals for topical use, including gynecological use, such as podophyllotoxin, are classified in D06 - *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*.

**G01AA Antibiotics**

Nystatin in combination with nifuratel is classified in G01AA51.

**G01AB Arsenic compounds**

**G01AC Quinoline derivatives**

**G01AD Organic acids**

**G01AE Sulfonamides**

Combinations of different sulfonamides are given the code G01AE10.

**G01AF Imidazole derivatives**

Imidazole derivatives (e.g. metronidazole and ornidazole) in formulations for vaginal administration are classified in this group. Parenteral formulations are classified in J01XD, as they are mainly used in anaerobic infections. Imidazole derivatives in oral (including tablets used for the treatment of gynecological infections only) and rectal dosage forms are classified in P01AB. Metronidazole for topical use in skin disorders is classified in D06BX - *Other chemotherapeutics*.

The combination of econazole and benzydamine is classified in G01AF55.

**G01AG** *Triazole derivatives*

Fluconazole tablets in single dose packages, only for gynecological infections, are classified together with other packages for systemic use in J02A - *Antimycotics for systemic use*.

**G01AX** *Other antiinfectives and antiseptics*

Nifuratel in combination with nystatin is classified in G01AA51.

Vaginal ring with dapiravine for risk reduction of HIV-1 infection is classified here.

**G01B** ANTIINFECTIVES/ANTISEPTICS IN COMBINATION WITH CORTICOSTEROIDS

All antiinfectives/antiseptics for gynecological use, which contain corticosteroids, are classified in this group.

**G01BA** *Antibiotics and corticosteroids*

**G01BC** *Quinoline derivatives and corticosteroids*

**G01BD** *Antiseptics and corticosteroids*

**G01BE** *Sulfonamides and corticosteroids*

**G01BF** *Imidazole derivatives and corticosteroids*

**G02** OTHER GYNECOLOGICALS

Analgesics used in dysmenorrhea, see N02B - *Other analgesics and antipyretics* and M01A - *Antiinflammatory and antirheumatic products, non-steroids*.

**G02A** UTEROTONICS

Plain preparations of oxytocin and analogues are classified in H01B - *Posterior pituitary lobe hormones*.

**G02AB** *Ergot alkaloids*

This group comprises ergot alkaloids, e.g. methylergometrine, used for stimulation of uterine contractions. Other ergot alkaloids are classified in C04A - *Peripheral vasodilators*, and in N02C - *Anti-migraine preparations*.

The DDDs are based on use in delivery.

**G02AC** *Ergot alkaloids and oxytocin incl. analogues, in combination*

**G02AD Prostaglandins**

Misoprostol low strength tablets (25 mcg) used for induction of labour are classified here. Misoprostol tablets used for peptic ulcer are classified in A02BB.

**G02AX Other uterotonics**

This group comprises uterotonics, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**G02B CONTRACEPTIVES FOR TOPICAL USE**

Contraceptives for systemic use, see G03A.

**G02BA Intrauterine contraceptives**

IUDs (intrauterine devices) are classified in this group. IUDs containing progestogens are also classified in this group.

**G02BB Intravaginal contraceptives**

Pessaries, vaginal foams etc. are classified in this group.

Intravaginal devices containing hormones are also classified in this group.

The DDDs for combined devices containing estrogen and progestogen are based on use in menstrual cycles of 28 days. Thus the DDD is 0.0357 UD (1 UD = 1 device).

**G02C OTHER GYNECOLOGICALS**

**G02CA Sympathomimetics, labour repressants**

This group includes sympathomimetics used to repress labour. Similar adrenergic drugs, which are mainly used in the treatment of asthma, are classified in R03C.

Fenoterol infusion only intended for repressing preterm labour is classified in this group, while other systemic formulations of fenoterol are classified in R03CC04.

The DDDs are based on use as labour repressants.

**G02CB Prolactine inhibitors**

Cabergoline and bromocriptine low dose tablets are classified in this group. Cabergoline and bromocriptine tablets in higher strengths are classified in N04 - *Anti-Parkinson drugs*.

Lisuride tablets in high strength (0.2 mg) are classified in this group, while low strength tablets (25 mcg) are classified in N02C -*Antimigraine preparations*.

The DDDs are based on use as lactation inhibitors. The DDD for parenteral depot formulations of bromocriptine is equal to the DDD for oral administration, based on the assumption that the single dose parenteral treatment equals 14 days of oral treatment.

#### **G02CC** *Antiinflammatory products for vaginal administration*

This group comprises e.g. non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs for vaginal administration.

Combinations of econazole and benzydamine is classified in G01AF55 - *econazole, combinations*.

#### **G02CX** *Other gynecologicals*

### **G03** **SEX HORMONES AND MODULATORS OF THE GENITAL SYSTEM**

Other hormones, see H - *Systemic hormonal preparations, excl. sex hormones and insulins*.

Sex hormones used only in the treatment of neoplastic diseases (often selected strengths) are classified in L - *Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents*.

The DDDs of many of the hormone preparations may vary considerably with the route of administration due to substantial differences in bioavailability. The DDDs of depot preparations are calculated as the dose divided by the dosing interval.

#### **G03A** **HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises hormonal preparations, which are used as contraceptives. Similar hormonal preparations, which are used for the treatment of e.g. menopausal symptoms and menstrual irregularities, are classified in G03F.

Combinations of cyproterone and estrogen also used as contraceptives are, however, classified in G03HB.

Intravaginal and intrauterine devices containing hormones are classified in G02B.

Transdermal patches for contraception are classified here.

The DDDs are based on use as contraceptives.

The DDDs of combined preparations of estrogen and progestogen and plain progestogen products are based on use in menstrual cycles of 28 days. Thus, the DDD is 0.75 and 1 UD for 21 and 28 tablets cycle package, respectively. The same principle is used for transdermal patches.

For the 24 tablets cycle packages the DDD is based on continuous use for 120 days and a 4-days tablet free interval. Thus, the DDD is 0.967 UD.

The DDDs for preparations only used in postcoital contraception are based on the course dose.

**G03AA *Progestogens and estrogens, fixed combinations***

This group comprises preparations, which contain fixed combinations of progestogen and estrogens.

The preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the progestogen.

Products containing mestranol (a prodrug of ethinylestradiol) are classified together with ethinylestradiol.

**G03AB *Progestogens and estrogens, sequential preparations***

This group comprises preparations with varying contents of progestogens and estrogens adjusted to the normal hormonal cycle. A package which is intended for one cycle, may contain e.g. three types of tablets, each designed to cover a special part of the menstrual period. Cycle packages may contain some tablets with progestogen only.

5th levels are built up as in G03AA.

**G03AC *Progestogens***

This group includes hormonal contraceptives, which contain progestogens only.

**G03AD *Emergency contraceptives***

Levonorgestrel products (packages) indicated only for emergency contraception are classified in G03AD01.

## G03B ANDROGENS

Anabolic steroids, see A14A. Norethandrolone, which has both anabolic and androgenic effects, is classified in A14A since the anabolic effect is considered to be the most important effect.

This group comprises male sex hormones. Combined preparations are included in this group, except combinations with female sex hormones, which are classified in G03E - *Androgens and female sex hormones in combination*.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

The DDDs are based on use in substitution therapy in male hypogonadism. The DDDs for patches (e.g. testosterone) are given in amount delivered.

### **G03BA 3-oxoandrosten (4) derivatives**

The DDD for parenteral and oral testosterone is expressed as declared amount of ester. The DDD for TD and SL route of administration is expressed as declared amount of testosterone.

### **G03BB 5-androstanon (3) derivatives**

## G03C ESTROGENS

This group comprises estrogens and combinations, except combinations with

- androgens, see G03E
- progestogens, see G03F
- antiandrogens, see G03HB

Hormonal contraceptives, see G03A.

Estrogens used only in neoplastic diseases, see L - *Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents*.

The DDDs are based on systemic use in postmenopausal estrogen substitution therapy and in the treatment of premenstrual ailments. However, for some preparations for vaginal administration the DDDs are based on local treatment.

The DDDs for transdermal preparations are based on the amount of active ingredient delivered per 24 hours and the number of days each patch is used.



**G03CA** *Natural and semisynthetic estrogens, plain*

This group comprises preparations, which contain one or more natural or semisynthetic estrogen. Estradiol/polyestradiol are classified at the same 5th level. The same applies to estriol/polyestriol. Combinations of estradiol and estriol are classified in G03CA53.

Combinations with other drugs, see G03CC.

Estropipate is classified in G03CA07 - *estrone*.

The DDD for nasal administration of estradiol is based on daily treatment.

**G03CB** *Synthetic estrogens, plain*

This group comprises preparations, which contain synthetic estrogens only.

Combinations with other drugs, see G03CC.

**G03CC** *Estrogens, combinations with other drugs*

This group includes combined preparations with natural, semisynthetic or synthetic estrogens and other drugs.

**G03CX** *Other estrogens*

Tibolone is classified in this group even though the chemical structure is different from the other estrogens.

**G03D** PROGESTOGENS

This group comprises progestogens and combinations, except combinations with

- androgens, see G03E
- estrogens, see G03F

Hormonal contraceptives, see G03A

IUDs (intrauterine devices) with progestogens, see G02BA.

Progestogens only used in neoplastic diseases, see L - *Antineoplastic and immunomodulating agents*.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

The DDDs are based on gynecological indications, for instance corpus luteum insufficiency and endometriosis.

**G03DA** *Pregnen (4) derivatives*

**G03DB** *Pregnadien derivatives*

**G03DC** *Estren derivatives*

Tibolone is classified in G03CX.

**G03E** ANDROGENS AND FEMALE SEX HORMONES IN COMBINATION

This group comprises preparations with androgen and estrogen and/or progestogen. The preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the androgen.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of climacterical ailments.

**G03EA** *Androgens and estrogens*

**G03EB** *Androgen, progestogen and estrogen in combination*

**G03EK** *Androgens and female sex hormones in combination with other drugs*

This group comprises preparations, which in addition to the hormones also contain other drugs.

**G03F** PROGESTOGENS AND ESTROGENS IN COMBINATION

This group comprises combined preparations used in the treatment of menopausal symptoms, menstrual irregularities etc.

Hormonal contraceptives, see G03A.

The DDDs for combined preparations of estrogens and progestogens are based on use in postmenopausal substitution therapy in cycles of 28 days. Thus, the DDD is 0.75 and 1 UD for 21 and 28 tablets cycle packages, respectively.

**G03FA** *Progestogens and estrogens, fixed combinations*

This group comprises preparations, which contain combinations of progestogens and estrogens. Sequential preparations are classified in G03FB. Combination packages with separate tablets containing progestogens and estrogens intended to be taken together are also classified in this group. The preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the progestogen. At each 5th level various estrogens may occur.

Combinations of progestogens and estrogens used as contraceptives are classified in G03A.

**G03FB** *Progestogens and estrogens, sequential preparations*

This group comprises preparations with varying contents of progestogens and estrogens adjusted to the normal hormonal cycle. A package which is intended for one cycle, may contain e.g. three types of tablets, each designed to cover a special part of the menstrual period. Cycle packages may contain some tablets with progestogens only. Combination packages with separate tablets containing progestogens and estrogens intended to be taken together and in sequence are also classified in this group.

5th levels are built up as in G03FA.

Hormonal contraceptives, sequential preparations, see G03AB.

**G03G** GONADOTROPINS AND OTHER OVULATION STIMULANTS

The DDDs are based on the initial treatment of anovulation.

**G03GA** *Gonadotropins*

This group comprises both naturally occurring gonad-stimulating hormones and synthetic ovulation stimulants.

G03GA02 comprises products of human origin (e.g. menotrophin) while G03GA30 comprises combinations of recombinant hormones (e.g. follitropin alfa and lutropin alfa).

**G03GB** *Ovulation stimulants, synthetic*

**G03H** ANTIANDROGENS

**G03HA** *Antiandrogens, plain*

Finasteride used for treatment of benign prostatic hypertrophy is classified in G04CB.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of hypersexualism.

**G03HB** *Antiandrogens and estrogens*

This group comprises all combinations of cyproterone and estrogen regardless of indication.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of hirsutism or prophylaxis of postmenopausal osteoporosis.

**G03X OTHER SEX HORMONES AND MODULATORS OF THE GENITAL SYSTEM**

This group comprises drugs modifying the genital functions, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Tibolone is classified in G03DC.

**G03XA *Antigonadotropins and similar agents***

The DDDs of danazol and gestrinone are based on the treatment of endometriosis.

**G03XB *Progesterone receptor modulators***

Mifepristone indicated for Cushings's syndrome is also classified in this group.

The combination package of mifepristone tablet and misoprostol vaginal tablets is classified in G03XB51.

The DDD for mifepristone (G03XB01) and for the combination package of mifepristone tablet and misoprostol vaginal tablets (G03XB51) is based on the use in termination of pregnancy.

The DDD for the combination package is given as amount of mifepristone.

**G03XC *Selective estrogen receptor modulators***

**G03XX *Other sex hormones and modulators of the genital system***

Vaginal formulations of prasterone are classified here while systemic formulations (tablets/injections) are classified in A14AA.

**G04 UROLOGICALS**

Antiseptic and antiinfective preparations for systemic use specifically used in urinary tract infections, see J01.

Antiinfectives for systemic use, see group J.

Gynecological antiinfectives and antiseptics, see G01.

**G04B UROLOGICALS**

This group comprises urological preparations other than antiseptics and antiinfectives.

**G04BA *Acidifiers***

#### **G04BC** *Urinary concretment solvents*

This group comprises agents, which dissolve urinary concretions, e.g. citrates. Plain potassium citrate preparations indicated for e.g. treatment of renal tubular acidosis with calcium stones are classified in A12BA - *Potassium (A12 Mineral supplements)*.

#### **G04BD** *Drugs for urinary frequency and incontinence*

This group comprises antispasmodics specifically used in the urogenital tractus.

Gastrointestinal antispasmodics, see A03.

Trospium in combination with analgesics are classified in A03DA.

The DDD for oral administered emeperonium is higher than the DDD for parenteral administered formulations, due to low oral bioavailability.

#### **G04BE** *Drugs used in erectile dysfunction*

Alprostadil intracavernosal injection for treatment of erectil dysfunction is classified here, while formulations used to maintain the patency of the ductus arteriosis in neonates are classified in C01EA01.

Combinations of papaverine and phentolamine for intracavernous administration are classified under G04BE30 - *combinations*. Combinations of phentolamine and aviptadil (polypeptide) are classified under G04BE30 - *combinations*.

Phosphodiesterase inhibitors also indicated for pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) are classified in this group. Other agents used for treatment of PAH are classified in C02KX or in B01AC. Combinations of ambrisentan or macitentan and phosphodiesterase inhibitors are classified in C02KX - *Antihypertensives for pulmonary arterial hypertension*.

Combinations of alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists or testosterone-5-alpha reductase inhibitors and phosphodiesterase inhibitors used in benign prostatic hypertrophy are classified in G04CA or G04CB, respectively.

The DDDs are based on single treatment of erectile dysfunction.

#### **G04BX** *Other urologicals*

This group comprises urologicals which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Phenazopyridine, plain products, are classified here, while phenazopyridine in combination with sulfonamides is classified according to the sulfonamide in J01EB20, J01EC20 or J01ED20.

Local anesthetic formulations for treatment of premature ejaculation are classified in N01B.

The DDD of phenazopyridine is based on analgesic treatment of conditions such as cystitis, prostatitis and urethritis. The DDD for phenylsalicylate is based on the prophylaxis of urinary tract infections. The other DDDs are based on the prophylaxis of urinary concretions.

#### G04C DRUGS USED IN BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERTROPHY

##### **G04CA *Alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists***

Alfuzosin and terazosin used in the management of urinary obstruction caused by benign prostatic hypertrophy, are classified here, while other alpha-adrenoreceptor blocking agents used both in the management of urinary obstruction and hypertension (e.g. doxazosin) are classified in C02CA.

##### **G04CB *Testosterone-5-alpha reductase inhibitors***

Combinations/combo packages with alpha-adrenoreceptor antagonists are classified in G04CA.

##### **G04CX *Other drugs used in benign prostatic hypertrophy***

**H SYSTEMIC HORMONAL PREPARATIONS, EXCL. SEX HORMONES AND INSULINS**

**H01 PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES**

- A *Anterior pituitary lobe hormones and analogues*
- B *Posterior pituitary lobe hormones*
- C *Hypothalamic hormones*

**H02 CORTICOSTEROIDS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

- A *Corticosteroids for systemic use, plain*
- B *Corticosteroids for systemic use, combinations*
- C *Antiadrenal preparations*

**H03 THYROID THERAPY**

- A *Thyroid preparations*
- B *Antithyroid preparations*
- C *Iodine therapy*

**H04 PANCREATIC HORMONES**

- A *Glycogenolytic hormones*

**H05 CALCIUM HOMEOSTASIS**

- A *Parathyroid hormones and analogues*
- B *Anti-parathyroid agents*

## **H SYSTEMIC HORMONAL PREPARATIONS, EXCL. SEX HORMONES AND INSULINS**

This group comprises all hormonal preparations for systemic use, except:

- Insulins, see A10.
- Anabolic steroids, see A14.
- Catecholamines, see C01C and R03C.
- Sex hormones, see G03.
- Sex hormones used in treatment of neoplastic diseases, see L02.
- Metreleptin used for treatment of complications of leptin deficiency in patients with generalised lipodystrophy is classified in A16AA.

The DDDs are generally based on the treatment or diagnosis of endocrine disorders.

### **H01 PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES AND ANALOGUES**

#### **H01A ANTERIOR PITUITARY LOBE HORMONES AND ANALOGUES**

This group comprises anterior pituitary lobe hormones; extracts, purified natural hormones and synthetic analogues.

Somatropin antagonists are classified in H01AX.

#### **H01AA ACTH**

This group comprises ACTH and synthetic analogues.

The DDD of corticotrophin is based on therapy, whereas that of tetracosactide is based on use as a diagnostic agent.

#### **H01AB Thyrotropin**

Biological thyrotropin is also classified in H01AB01. Thyrotropin products approved for diagnostic purposes only are classified in V04CJ.

The DDD for biological thyrotropin classified in H01AB01 is 5 U.

#### **H01AC Somatropin and somatropin agonists**

Mecasermin (insulin like growth factor) is classified in this group since it is used on the same indications as somatropin and somatrem. High strength preparations of sermorelin are classified here.

Low strength preparations used as diagnostic agents for pituitary function are classified in V04CD.



Tesamorelin used in the treatment of HIV patients with lipodystrophy is classified in this group.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of growth retardation in children with a body weight of 25 kg.

**H01AX *Other anterior pituitary lobe hormones and analogues***

Somatropin antagonists are classified here.

**H01B POSTERIOR PITUITARY LOBE HORMONES**

This group comprises posterior pituitary lobe hormones; extracts, purified natural hormones and synthetic analogues.

**H01BA *Vasopressin and analogues***

The DDDs are based on the treatment of diabetes insipidus.

The DDD for terlipressin (as acetate) is based on treatment of bleeding oesophageal varices.

**H01BB *Oxytocin and analogues***

Oxytocin and analogues in combination with ergot alkaloids are classified in G02A - *Uterotonics*

The DDDs are based on use in delivery.

**H01C HYPOTHALAMIC HORMONES**

This group comprises hypothalamic hormones; extracts, purified natural hormones and synthetic analogues.

Hypothalamic hormones used as diagnostic agents for pituitary function are classified in V04CD.

**H01CA *Gonadotropin-releasing hormones***

Buserelin, goserelin, histrelin, leuprorelin, and triptorelin are classified in L02AE *Gonadotropin releasing hormone analogues*.

Gonadorelin used as diagnostic agent is classified in V04CM.

The DDD of nafarelin is based on the treatment of endometriosis. No other DDDs have been assigned, due to the highly variable dosages used.

### **H01CB** *Somatostatin and analogues*

Somatostatin, octreotide and lanreotide, which are also used in cancer, are classified in this group.

The DDDs of octreotide and lanreotide are based on the treatment of acromegaly.

### **H01CC** *Anti-gonadotropin-releasing hormones*

## **H02** **CORTICOSTEROIDS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

As a main rule, systemic corticosteroids should be classified in this group. There is, however, one exception: M01BA - *Antiinflammatory/antirheumatic agents in combination with corticosteroids*. Anticorticosteroids are also classified in this group, see H02CA.

Corticosteroids for local oral treatment, see A01AC.

Enemas and rectal foams for local treatment of e.g. ulcerative colitis, see A07E. Oral corticosteroids solely indicated for the treatment of intestinal inflammatory diseases are classified in A07E - *Intestinal antiinflammatory agents*.

Corticosteroids for topical use, see D07.

Combined corticosteroid preparations for local treatment of acne, see D10AA.

Corticosteroids in combination with antiinfectives/antiseptics for local treatment of gynecological infections, see G01B.

Corticosteroids for nasal use, see R01AD.

Corticosteroids for inhalation, see R03BA.

Corticosteroids, eye/ear preparations, see S.

### **H02A** **CORTICOSTEROIDS FOR SYSTEMIC USE, PLAIN**

Only plain preparations are classified in this group. The group also includes corticosteroid preparations for local injection.

### **H02AA** *Mineralocorticoids*

The DDDs are based on substitution therapy in Addison's disease.

### **H02AB** *Glucocorticoids*

Oral formulations used solely in local treatment are classified in A07EA.

Depot preparations may have different DDDs, compared to other formulations, due to different indications.

## H02B CORTICOSTEROIDS FOR SYSTEMIC USE, COMBINATIONS

This group comprises all combined preparations, e.g. combinations with local anesthetics.

No DDDs have been assigned.

### **H02BX** *Corticosteroids for systemic use, combinations*

## H02C ANTIADRENAL PREPARATIONS

### **H02CA** *Anticorticosteroids*

Trilostane used in Cushing's syndrome is classified in this group.

Mifepristone used in Cushing's syndrome is classified in G03XB.

Metyrapone used in Cushing's syndrome is classified in V04CD.

Pharmaceutical formulations of ketoconazole solely indicated in Cushing's syndrome are classified in this group.

The DDD of trilostan is based on the treatment of Cushing's syndrome.

## **H03** **THYROID THERAPY**

### H03A THYROID PREPARATIONS

This group comprises thyroid extracts and synthetic analogues used in the treatment of hypothyrosis.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of hypothyrosis.

### **H03AA** *Thyroid hormones*

This group comprises natural and synthetic thyroid hormones. Combinations of levothyroxine and liothyronine are classified at a separate 5th level: H03AA03.

Liothyronine hydrochloride is classified in H03AA02.

### H03B ANTITHYROID PREPARATIONS

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of hyperthyrosis.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of hyperthyrosis.

- H03BA** *Thiouracils*
- H03BB** *Sulfur-containing imidazole derivatives*
- H03BC** *Perchlorates*
- H03BX** *Other antithyroid preparations*

**H03C** IODINE THERAPY

This group comprises iodine preparations for systemic use.

**H03CA** *Iodine therapy*

The DDDs are based on systemic therapy in thyroid disease. The DDD is given in amount of iodide.

**H04** **PANCREATIC HORMONES**

**H04A** GLYCOGENOLYTIC HORMONES

**H04AA** *Glycogenolytic hormones*

The pancreas glycogenolytic hormone glucagon is classified in this group.

Diazoxide, which is also used for treatment of hypoglycemia, is classified in C02DA01 and V03AH01.

Insulins are classified in A10A.

The DDD of glucagon is based on single dose treatment of hypoglycemia.

**H05** **CALCIUM HOMEOSTASIS**

Drugs acting on calcium homeostasis are classified in this group.

Vitamin-D preparations, see A11CC.

**H05A** PARATHYROID HORMONES AND ANALOGUES

**H05AA** *Parathyroid hormones and analogues*

Extracts from parathyroid glands are classified in this group.

H05B ANTI-PARATHYROID AGENTS

**H05BA** *Calcitonin preparations*

Calcitonin, natural and synthetic, is classified in this group. Other drugs for treatment of hypercalcemia, see M05B.

The DDDs of the calcitonins are based on the treatment of Paget's disease.

**H05BX** *Other anti-parathyroid agents*

Paricalcitol and doxercalciferol indicated for the prevention and treatment of secondary hyperparathyroidism are classified here.

Oral formulations of calcifediol, solely approved for treatment of renal secondary hyperparathyroidism are classified here, while all other pharmaceutical formulations of calcifediol are classified in A11CC06.

The DDD for cinacalcet is based on the treatment of secondary hyperparathyroidism.

## **J ANTIINFECTIVES FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

### **J01 ANTIBACTERIALS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

- A *Tetracyclines*
- B *Amphenicols*
- C *Beta-lactam antibacterials, penicillins*
- D *Other beta-lactam antibacterials*
- E *Sulfonamides and trimethoprim*
- F *Macrolides, lincosamides and streptogramins*
- G *Aminoglycoside antibacterials*
- M *Quinolone antibacterials*
- R *Combinations of antibacterials*
- X *Other antibacterials*

### **J02 ANTIMYCOTICS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

- A *Antimycotics for systemic use*

### **J04 ANTIMYCOBACTERIALS**

- A *Drugs for treatment of tuberculosis*
- B *Drugs for treatment of lepra*

### **J05 ANTIVIRALS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

- A *Direct acting antivirals*

### **J06 IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS**

- A *Immune sera*
- B *Immunoglobulins*

### **J07 VACCINES**

- A *Bacterial vaccines*
- B *Viral vaccines*
- C *Bacterial and viral vaccines, combined*
- X *Other vaccines*

## J

### ANTIINFECTIVES FOR SYSTEMIC USE

Antiinfectives are also classified in the following groups:

- A01AB *Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment*
- A02BD *Combinations for eradication of Helicobacter pylori*
- A07A *Intestinal antiinfectives*
- D01 *Antifungals for dermatological use*
- D06 *Antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use*
- D07C *Corticosteroids, combinations with antibiotics*
- D09AA *Ointment dressings with antiinfectives*
- D10AF *Antiinfectives for treatment of acne*
- G01 *Gynecological antiinfectives and antiseptics*
- P *Antiparasitic products, insecticides and repellents*
- R02AB *Antibiotics*
- S01/
- S02/
- S03 *Eye and ear preparations with antiinfectives*

Even systemically administered antibacterials and antimycotics may be classified in other groups if their target is exclusively local, e.g. the skin - D01 - *Antifungals for dermatological use*.

Inhaled antiinfectives are classified in J.

The DDDs for the antiinfectives are as a main rule based on the use in infections of moderate severity. However, some antiinfectives are only used in severe infections and their DDDs are assigned accordingly. The DDDs assigned are based on **daily treatment**. The duration of the treatment periods is not taken into consideration. For antiinfectives given in a high initially starting dose followed by a lower daily "maintenance" dose, the DDDs are based on the "maintenance" dose if the total duration of the treatment course is more than one week. If, however, the treatment course is 7 days or less, the DDDs are assigned according to the average daily dose i.e. the total course dose divided by the number of treatment days (e.g. azithromycin).

## **J01 ANTIBACTERIALS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises antibacterials for systemic use, except antimycobacterials, which are classified in J04. The antibacterials are classified according to their mode of action and chemistry.

Combinations of two or more systemic antibacterials from different third levels are classified in J01R, except combinations of sulfonamides and trimethoprim, which are classified at a separate 4th level, J01EE.

Combinations of antibacterials and tuberculostatics are classified in J04AM.

Combinations of antibacterials with other drugs, including local anesthetics or vitamins, are classified at separate 5th levels in the respective antibacterial group by using the 50-series.

Inhaled antiinfectives are classified here based on the fact that preparations for inhalation can not be separated from preparations for injection.

### **J01A TETRACYCLINES**

#### ***J01AA Tetracyclines***

This group comprises tetracycline antibacterials inhibiting the bacterial protein synthesis through binding to the 30-S part of ribosomes.

The tetracyclines have different DDDs due to kinetic differences. The use of tetracyclines in long-term, low dose treatment of acne is not taken into account in the assignment of DDDs.

### **J01B AMPHENICOLS**

#### ***J01BA Amphenicols***

This group comprises amphenicol antibacterials inhibiting the bacterial protein synthesis.

Thiamphenicol acetylcysteinate glycinate for inhalation is classified in J01BA52.

### **J01C BETA-LACTAM ANTIBACTERIALS, PENICILLINS**

This group comprises penicillin beta-lactam antibacterials, inhibiting the bacterial cell wall synthesis. Combinations of penicillins from different 4th levels, including beta-lactamase inhibitors, are classified in J01CR.



**J01CA *Penicillins with extended spectrum***

This group comprises penicillins with enhanced activity against gram negative rods, e.g. ampicillin and similar antibiotics.

The esters, for instance pivampicillin and pivmecillinam, have a higher bioavailability and thus a lower DDD than the corresponding non-ester compounds.

The DDDs for some of the compounds, for instance carbenicillin, piperacillin, ticarcillin and sulbenicillin, are based on the dosages used for narrow indications, i.e. life threatening infections.

**J01CE *Beta-lactamase sensitive penicillins***

Benzylpenicillin and phenoxymethylpenicillin have different DDDs due to differences in indications, route of administration and bioavailability. The DDDs for the combination of benzylpenicillin and procaine penicillin is based on the treatment of syphilis, see list of DDDs for combination products, [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

**J01CF *Beta-lactamase resistant penicillins***

**J01CG *Beta-lactamase inhibitors***

The DDD for sulbactam is based on its use together with ampicillin, usually in a dose ratio of 1:2 respectively.

**J01CR *Combinations of penicillins, incl. beta-lactamase inhibitors***

This group comprises combinations of penicillins and/or beta-lactamase inhibitors. Combinations containing one penicillin and enzyme inhibitor are classified at different 5th levels according to the penicillin.

Combinations of two or more penicillins with or without enzyme inhibitor are classified at a separate 5th level, J01CR50. Sultamicillin, a prodrug for sulbactam and ampicillin, is given a separate 5th level code: J01CR04.

The DDD for sultamicillin, a prodrug for sulbactam and ampicillin, is lower than the corresponding DDD for the ordinary combination due to higher bioavailability.

## J01D OTHER BETA-LACTAM ANTIBACTERIALS

This group comprises beta-lactam antibacterials, other than penicillins.

The cephalosporins are classified into subgroups according to generations. The reference applied when defining generations is “Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases” by Mandell, Douglas and Benett, sixth edition, 2005. For the definitions used in this textbook, see under J01DB, J01DC, J01DD and J01DE.

Combinations with beta-lactamase inhibitors are classified by using the 50-series.

The cephalosporins are used in highly variable dosages for different indications, which should be reflected in the assigned DDDs. The indications for use of the cephalosporins (i.e. the severity of the infections) vary rather extensively from one country to another. The assigned DDDs are placed in the upper area of the dose range for moderate to severe infections.

### **J01DB *First-generation cephalosporins***

The first generation compounds have relatively narrow spectrum of activity focused primarily on the gram-positive cocci.

### **J01DC *Second-generation cephalosporins***

The second generation cephalosporins have a variable activity against gram-positive cocci but have increased activity against gram-negative bacteria. The cephamycin group is included in the second-generation cephalosporins.

### **J01DD *Third-generation cephalosporins***

The third generation cephalosporins have a marked activity against gram-negative bacteria. Limited activity against gram-positive cocci, particularly methicillin susceptible *S. aureus*, might occur.

### **J01DE *Fourth-generation cephalosporins***

The fourth generation cephalosporins have activity against gram-positive cocci and a broad array of gram-negative bacteria, including *P. aeruginosa* and many of the Enterobacteriaceae with inducible chromosomal  $\beta$ -lactamases.

**J01DF**    **Monobactams**

Arginin and lysine salts of aztreonam are classified in J01DF01; thus aztreonam for inhalation is classified together with systemic formulations.

**J01DH**    **Carbapenems**

The DDD for meropenem is based on treatment of severe infections.

**J01DI**    **Other cephalosporins and penems**

**J01E**    **SULFONAMIDES AND TRIMETHOPRIM**

This group comprises systemic sulfonamide and trimethoprim preparations. Combinations of sulfonamide and trimethoprim are classified in J01EE. Preparations containing two or more sulfonamides are classified within the different 4th levels, using the 5th level code 20.

In such combinations, the half-life of the most long-acting sulfonamide determines the classification. Sulfonamides in combinations with other antibacterials (excl. trimethoprim) are classified in J01R. Dapsone is classified in J04 - *Antimycobacterials*. See also A07A - *Intestinal antiinfectives*.

Preparations, which in addition contain a urine acidifier, such as vitamin C, calcium- or ammonium chloride, are classified at the plain 5th levels.

The DDDs for the sulfonamides are related to the duration of effect, i.e. usually the long-acting sulfonamides will have lower DDDs than the short-acting.

**J01EA**    **Trimethoprim and derivatives**

The DDDs are based on the treatment of acute urinary-tract infections.

**J01EB**    **Short-acting sulfonamides**

This group comprises sulfonamides with a biological half-life not exceeding approx. 7 hours.

**J01EC**    **Intermediate-acting sulfonamides**

This group comprises sulfonamides with a biological half-life of approx. 11-12 hours.

**J01ED**    **Long-acting sulfonamides**

This group comprises sulfonamides with a biological half-life of approx. 35 hours or more.

**J01EE** *Combinations of sulfonamides and trimethoprim, incl. derivatives*

When establishing DDDs for combination products, both components are taken into consideration, see list of DDDs for combination products, [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

**J01F** MACROLIDES, LINCOSAMIDES AND STREPTOGRAMINS

This group comprises macrolide, lincosamide and streptogramin antibacterials inhibiting bacterial protein synthesis through binding to the 50-S part of the ribosomes.

**J01FA** *Macrolides*

Erythromycin ethylsuccinate tablets have been assigned a higher DDD than other preparations of erythromycin due to a lower bio-availability. This DDD is mainly based on the dose recommendations.

The oral DDD for azithromycin is based on a 5-day regimen.

**J01FF** *Lincosamides*

Orally and parenterally administered clindamycin have different DDDs due to different indications, i.e. the intestinal and systemic infections, respectively.

**J01FG** *Streptogramins*

The streptogramin components dalfopristin/quinupristin are semisynthetic derivatives of pristinamycin. The two components have synergistic antibacterial effect and are always used together. Quinupristin/dalfopristin are therefore classified at the ATC plain level J01FG02.

**J01G** AMINOGLYCOSIDE ANTIBACTERIALS

This group comprises aminoglycoside antibacterials disturbing the bacterial protein synthesis through binding to the 30-S part of the ribosomes.

**J01GA** *Streptomycins*

Streptomycins in combination with antimycobacterials are classified in J04AM.

**J01GB** *Other aminoglycosides*

Tobramycin and amikacin for inhalation are classified together with the systemic formulations in J01GB01 and J01GB06 respectively.

The DDDs for the aminoglycosides are based on use in severe infections.

**J01M** QUINOLONE ANTIBACTERIALS

This group comprises quinolone antibacterials, inhibiting the bacterial DNA-gyrase.

**J01MA** *Fluoroquinolones*

Flumequine is classified in J01MB. Alalevonadifloxacin is classified in J01MA24 together with levonadifloxacin.

The DDDs for the fluoroquinolones are mainly based on the treatment of respiratory tract infections.

The DDDs for pefloxacin, enoxacin and norfloxacin are based on the treatment of complicated urinary tract infections.

**J01MB** *Other quinolones*

Preparations, which in addition contain a urine acidifier, such as vitamin C, calcium- or ammonium chloride, are classified at the plain 5th levels.

The DDDs are generally based on the treatment of acute urinary tract infections. The DDD for rosoxacin is based on single dose treatment of gonorrhoea.

**J01R** COMBINATIONS OF ANTIBACTERIALS

This group comprises combinations of two or more antibacterials for systemic use from different ATC 3rd levels.

The detailed classification of antibacterial combinations in J01RA is based on the general concern with the use of antibacterials worldwide and the need for drug monitoring, incl. mapping of the use with resistance patterns.

**J01RA** *Combinations of antibacterials*

Combinations of urinary antiseptics and antiinfectives are classified in J01RA02.

## J01X OTHER ANTIBACTERIALS

This group comprises antibacterials with various modes of action not classified in the preceding groups.

### **J01XA *Glycopeptide antibacterials***

This group comprises glycopeptide antibacterials, inhibiting the cell wall synthesis of gram positive bacteria. Lipoglycopeptide antibacterials are also included in this group. Teicoplanin and intravenous preparations of vancomycin are classified in this group. Oral formulations containing vancomycin are classified in A07A.

### **J01XB *Polymyxins***

This group comprises polymyxin antibacterials acting on the bacterial cytoplasm membrane. Oral formulations containing colistin are classified in A07A.

### **J01XC *Steroid antibacterials***

This group comprises steroid antibacterials, inhibiting the binding of bacterial transfer-RNA and the 50-S part of the ribosomes.

### **J01XD *Imidazole derivatives***

This group comprises imidazole antibacterials acting through active metabolites in anaerobic bacteria. Only formulations for parenteral use of e.g. metronidazole are classified in this group. Oral formulations and suppositories of imidazole derivatives are classified in P01 - *Antiprotozoals*. Pessaries are classified in G01 - *Gynecological antiinfectives and antiseptics*.

The DDDs for the parenteral imidazole formulations are based on the treatment of anaerobic bacteria infections.

### **J01XE *Nitrofurantoin derivatives***

Preparations, which in addition contain a urine acidifier, such as vitamin C, calcium- or ammonium chloride, are classified at the plain 5th levels.

Nitrofurantoin in combination with phenazopyridine is classified in J01XE51.

The DDDs are generally based on the treatment of acute urinary tract infections.

## **J01XX Other antibacterials**

Preparations, which in addition contain a urine acidifier, such as vitamin C, calcium- or ammonium chloride, are classified at the plain 5th levels.

The parenteral DDD for fosfomycin is based on the use of a single prophylactic dose in connection with surgery, whilst the oral DDD is based on treatment of uncomplicated lower urinary tract infections given as a single dose of fosfomycin trometamol.

The DDD for spectinomycin is based on the use of a single dose for treatment of uncomplicated gonorrhoea.

The DDD for methenamine is based on prophylaxis of urinary tract infections. The DDDs for mandelic acid and nitroloxline are based on the treatment of acute urinary tract infections.

## **J02 ANTIMYCOTICS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

### **J02A ANTIMYCOTICS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group does not include antimycotics specifically for dermatological use even if they are administered systemically (see D01B).

Antimycotics - see also:

A01AB *Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment*

A07A *Intestinal antiinfectives*

D01 *Antifungals for dermatological use*

G01 *Gynecological antiinfectives and antiseptics*

Fumagillin used in the treatment of intestinal microsporidiosis is classified in P01AX.

### **J02AA Antibiotics**

The DDD for amphotericin B is based on the conventional formulation. Dosages of other formulations (e.g. liposomal) of amphotericin B may vary considerably. This should be taken into consideration when comparing drug use.

### **J02AB Imidazole derivatives**

Pharmaceutical formulations of ketoconazole solely indicated for the treatment of Cushing's syndrome are classified in H02CA - *Anticorticosteroids*.

## **J02AC** *Triazole and tetrazole derivatives*

All oral and parenteral formulations of fluconazole are classified here. Fosfluconazole (prodrug of fluconazole) is classified at the same 5th level as fluconazole. Vaginal formulations of triazole derivatives, see G01AG.

The prodrug fosfluconazole is classified together with fluconazole in J02AC01.

The oral DDD for posaconazole is based on the recommended dose for gastro-resistant tablets.

## **J02AX** *Other antimycotics for systemic use*

### **J04** **ANTIMYCOBACTERIALS**

This group comprises drugs mainly used for the treatment of tuberculosis or lepra. However, streptomycins are classified in J01G - *Aminoglycoside antibacterials*. Streptomycin in combination with antimycobacterials are classified in J04AM.

#### **J04A** DRUGS FOR TREATMENT OF TUBERCULOSIS

The DDDs are based on combination therapy in the treatment of tuberculosis. DDDs for combination products see [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

#### **J04AA** *Aminosalicylic acid and derivatives*

Calcium aluminoparaaminosalicylate is classified together with calcium aminosalicylate in J04AA03.

#### **J04AB** *Antibiotics*

This group comprises antibiotics specifically used in tuberculosis, except streptomycin - see comment under J04AM. Other antibiotics, see J01 - *Antibacterials for systemic use*.

The DDD for rifapentine is based on the first 6 months treatment period, including both the initial phase and the continuous phase.

#### **J04AC** *Hydrazides*

Combinations of isoniazid and rifampicin or other tuberculostatics are classified in J04AM.

#### **J04AD** *Thiocarbamide derivatives*

#### **J04AK** *Other drugs for treatment of tuberculosis*



**J04AM** *Combinations of drugs for treatment of tuberculosis*

Combinations of drugs classified in J04AA - J04AK are classified in this group (e. g. isoniazid + rifampicin).

Combinations of antimycobacterials and antibacterials for systemic use (J01) are classified here.

**J04B** DRUGS FOR TREATMENT OF LEPROSY

**J04BA** *Drugs for treatment of leprosy*

Thalidomide, which is also used for treatment of leprosy, is classified in L04AX.

**J05** **ANTIVIRALS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises specific antiviral agents, excl. vaccines.

Antivirals for dermatological use, see D06BB.

Antivirals for ophthalmological use, see S01A - *Antiinfectives*.

Amantadine, which is also used as an antiviral agent, is classified in N04BB.

**J05A** DIRECT ACTING ANTIVIRALS

This group comprises agents acting directly on the virus. All antivirals, including monoclonal antibodies, used in the treatment of HIV are classified in this group.

**J05AA** *Thiosemicarbazones*

**J05AB** *Nucleosides and nucleotides excl. reverse transcriptase inhibitors*

Ribavirin is classified in J05AP.

The combinations of ribavirin and peginterferon alfa-2a or peginterferon alfa-2b are classified in L03AB.

The DDDs for aciclovir, valaciclovir and famciclovir are based on the treatment of herpes zoster infections.

The DDD for ganciclovir is based on the treatment of cytomegalovirus infections in immunosuppressed patients.

The DDD for cidofovir is based on the treatment of CMV-retinitis in AIDS patients.

**J05AC** *Cyclic amines*

Amantadine is classified in N04 - *Anti-Parkinson drugs*.

**J05AD** *Phosphonic acid derivatives*

The DDD for foscarnet is based on the treatment of CMV-retinitis in AIDS patients.

**J05AE** *Protease inhibitors*

The DDDs are based on combination therapy in HIV infections.

The DDDs for atazanavir and fosamprenavir are based on combination therapy with ritonavir as a pharmacokinetic enhancer.

The DDD for saquinavir is based on the dose recommendations for hard capsules.

**J05AF** *Nucleoside and nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors*

The DDDs are based on combination therapy in HIV infections.

The DDD for tenofovir disoproxil is 245 mg and is equivalent to 300 mg tenofovir disoproxil fumarat.

The DDDs for entecavir and telbivudine are based on monotherapy in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B virus infections.

**J05AG** *Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors*

Vaginal ring with dapiravine for risk reduction of HIV-1 infection is classified in G01AX.

The DDDs are based on combination therapy in HIV infections.

**J05AH** *Neuraminidase inhibitors*

All neuraminidase inhibitors are classified here, regardless of formulation.

The DDD for oseltamivir is based on the treatment of influenza.

**J05AJ** *Integrase inhibitors*

**J05AP** *Antivirals for treatment of HCV infections*

This group includes both single substances and combinations.

The inhalation DDD for ribavirin is based on the treatment of respiratory syncytial viral (RSV) infections in neonates and infants.

**J05AR**    ***Antivirals for treatment of HIV infections, combinations***

Combinations with pharmacokinetic enhancers are classified in this group, regardless of their antiviral effect. Plain products with cobicistat are classified in V03AX.

See list of DDDs for combination products, [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

**J05AX**    ***Other antivirals***

**J06**        **IMMUNE SERA AND IMMUNOGLOBULINS**

No DDDs have been assigned, except for nebacumab in J06BC01.

**J06A**        **IMMUNE SERA**

**J06AA**      ***Immune sera***

This group comprises specific antisera of non-human origin.

**J06B**        **IMMUNOGLOBULINS**

This group comprises normal human immunoglobulins, specific immunoglobulins and monoclonal antibodies.

**J06BA**      ***Immunoglobulins, normal human***

Products containing immunoglobulin and hyaluronidase are classified in J06BA01.

**J06BB**      ***Specific immunoglobulins***

Combinations with vaccines are classified in J07.

**J06BC**      ***Antibacterial monoclonal antibodies***

**J06BD**      ***Antiviral monoclonal antibodies***

Nirsevimab for prophylactic use is classified in J06BD08.

**J07**        **VACCINES**

The vaccines are divided in bacterial, viral and combinations of bacterial and viral at separate ATC 3rd levels. Subdivision at the 4th level is made mainly according to indication. The ATC 5th level does not reflect the manufacturing process, e.g. recombinant is not included in the level names.

Combinations of vaccines within the same 3rd level are given separate 5th levels using the 50-series. 5th levels may contain adjuvans.

See comments under the 4th levels.

No DDDs have been assigned.

**J07A** BACTERIAL VACCINES

**J07AC** *Anthrax vaccines*

**J07AD** *Brucellosis vaccines*

**J07AE** *Cholera vaccines*

Combinations with typhoid vaccine are classified in this group.

**J07AF** *Diphtheria vaccines*

Different strengths of the diphtheria vaccines are classified at the same 5th level. Combinations with tetanus vaccine are classified in J07AM. Combinations with both tetanus and pertussis are classified in J07AJ.

Combinations with haemophilus influenza and tetanus vaccines are classified in J07AG.

Combinations with poliomyelitis and/or rubella are classified in J07CA.

**J07AG** *Haemophilus influenzae B vaccines*

Combinations with diphtheria and tetanus vaccines are classified here.

Combinations with pertussis and toxoids are classified here.

Combinations with poliomyelitis are classified in J07CA.

**J07AH** *Meningococcal vaccines*

Meningococcal vaccines are classified at separate 5th levels according to the number of serotypes of neisseria meningitis contained in the vaccine. Monovalent vaccines obtained from group A are classified at a separate 5th level, while other monovalent vaccines are classified together.

Products containing oligosaccharides instead of polysaccharides may be included at each 5th level.

**J07AJ** *Pertussis vaccines*

Combinations with tetanus and/or diphtheria vaccine are classified in this group.

Combinations with haemophilus influenzae B are classified in J07AG.

Combinations with poliomyelitis are classified in J07CA.

**J07AK** *Plague vaccines*

**J07AL** *Pneumococcal vaccines*

**J07AM** *Tetanus vaccines*

Combinations with tetanus immunoglobulin are classified in this group.

Combinations with diphtheria and/or typhoid vaccines are classified in J07AM51.

Combinations with diphtheria and pertussis vaccines are classified in J07AJ.

Combinations with haemophilus influenza and diphtheria vaccines are classified in J07AG.

Combinations with poliomyelitis and/or rubella are classified in J07CA.

**J07AN** *Tuberculosis vaccines*

**J07AP** *Typhoid vaccines*

Combinations with tetanus vaccine, also when including diphtheria vaccine, are classified in J07AM.

**J07AR** *Typhus (exanthematicus) vaccines*

**J07AX** *Other bacterial vaccines*

This group comprises bacterial vaccines, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups, e.g. Q fever vaccine.

J07B VIRAL VACCINES

**J07BA** *Encephalitis vaccines*

**J07BB** *Influenza vaccines*

Split virus vaccine is classified in J07BB02 together with surface antigen.

**J07BC** *Hepatitis vaccines*

Recombinant and plasma derived hepatitis vaccines are classified at the same 5th level.

Therapeutic vaccines for chronic hepatitis B are classified in J07BC01.

Combinations of malaria and hepatitis B vaccines are classified in J07XA01 - *malaria vaccines*.

**J07BD** *Measles vaccines*

Combinations with mumps and/or rubella are classified in this group.

**J07BE**    ***Mumps vaccines***

Combinations with measles vaccine, with or without rubella, are classified in J07BD. Combinations with rubella vaccine are classified in J07BJ.

**J07BF**    ***Poliomyelitis vaccines***

Poliomyelitis vaccines are classified according to the number of virus types included and according to administration form, i.e. oral or parenteral.

Combinations with diphtheria/tetanus/pertussis and/or Haemophilus influenzae B are classified in J07CA.

**J07BG**    ***Rabies vaccines***

**J07BH**    ***Rota virus diarrhea vaccines***

**J07BJ**    ***Rubella vaccines***

Combinations with mumps vaccine are classified in this group. Combinations with measles vaccine, with or without mumps vaccine, are classified in J07BD.

Combinations with diphtheria and tetanus are classified in J07CA.

**J07BK**    ***Varicella zoster vaccines***

**J07BL**    ***Yellow fever vaccines***

**J07BM**    ***Papillomavirus vaccines***

**J07BN**    ***Covid-19 vaccines***

**J07BX**    ***Other viral vaccines***

J07C    BACTERIAL AND VIRAL VACCINES, COMBINED

**J07CA**    ***Bacterial and viral vaccines, combined***

Combinations including bacterial and viral vaccines are classified at separate 5th levels. No specific system for subdivision is established.

J07X    OTHER VACCINES

**J07XA**    ***Parasitic vaccines***

Combinations of malaria and hepatitis B vaccines are classified in J07XA01 - *malaria vaccines*.

**L ANTINEOPLASTIC AND IMMUNOMODULATING AGENTS**

**L01 ANTINEOPLASTIC AGENTS**

- A *Alkylating agents*
- B *Antimetabolites*
- C *Plant alkaloids and other natural products*
- D *Cytotoxic antibiotics and related substances*
- E *Protein kinase inhibitors*
- F *Monoclonal antibodies and antibody drug conjugates*
- X *Other antineoplastic agents*

**L02 ENDOCRINE THERAPY**

- A *Hormones and related agents*
- B *Hormone antagonists and related agents*

**L03 IMMUNOSTIMULANTS**

- A *Immunostimulants*

**L04 IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS**

- A *Immunosuppressants*

## L ANTINEOPLASTIC AND IMMUNOMODULATING AGENTS

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of neoplastic diseases, and immunomodulating agents.

Corticosteroids for systemic use, see H02.

### L01 ANTINEOPLASTIC AGENTS

Combination products are classified in L01XY - *Combinations of antineoplastic agents*.

Detoxifying agents used in connection with high dose treatment of antineoplastic agents are classified in V03AF (e.g. calcium folinate).

Radiopharmaceuticals used in the treatment of cancer are classified in V10X.

DDDs have been established for the protein kinase inhibitors in L01E only.

No DDDs have been established for substances classified in ATC 3<sup>rd</sup> level L01A, L01B, L01C, L01D, L01F or L01X. This is because of highly individualised use and wide dosage ranges. The doses used vary substantially because of various types and severity of neoplastic diseases, and also because of the extensive use of combination therapy.

The consumption of the antineoplastic agents is in some countries measured in grams. This is recommended as a method to be used internationally for these particular agents.

- L01A ALKYLATING AGENTS
- L01AA** *Nitrogen mustard analogues*
- L01AB** *Alkyl sulfonates*
- L01AC** *Ethylene imines*
- L01AD** *Nitrosoureas*
- L01AG** *Epoxides*
- L01AX** *Other alkylating agents*

- L01B ANTIMETABOLITES
- L01BA** *Folic acid analogues*

Trimetrexate is classified in P01AX - *Other agents against amoebiasis and other protozoal agents*.



Pre-filled syringes/pens of methotrexate for use in non-cancer indications and all oral formulations are classified in L04AX03.

**L01BB** *Purine analogues*

Parenteral formulations of cladribine used in cancer are classified in this group, while oral formulations for multiple sclerosis are classified in L04AA.

**L01BC** *Pyrimidine analogues*

Fluorouracil for systemic and local treatment is classified here.

L01C PLANT ALKALOIDS AND OTHER NATURAL PRODUCTS

**L01CA** *Vinca alkaloids and analogues*

Synthetic analogues are also classified in this group.

**L01CB** *Podophyllotoxin derivatives*

Antivirals for topical use, e.g. podophyllotoxin, see D06BB - *Antivirals*.

**L01CC** *Colchicine derivatives*

Colchicine is classified in M04AC01.

**L01CD** *Taxanes*

L01CD01 - *paclitaxel* includes solvent based paclitaxel and paclitaxel albumin.

**L01CE** *Topoisomerase 1 (TOP1) inhibitors*

All formulations of irinotecan (e.g. liposomal) are classified in L01CE02.

**L01CX** *Other plant alkaloids and natural products*

L01D CYTOTOXIC ANTIBIOTICS AND RELATED SUBSTANCES

**L01DA** *Actinomycines*

**L01DB** *Anthracyclines and related substances*

**L01DC** *Other cytotoxic antibiotics*

Mitomycin used in glaucoma surgery is also classified here.

L01E PROTEIN KINASE INHIBITORS

This group comprises protein kinase inhibitors used for neoplastic diseases. Substances are classified according to their main target.

Substances which are multi-targeted without a clear main target are classified in L01EX.

Lipid kinase inhibitors (phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase (Pi3K) inhibitors) are classified in L01EM.

**L01EA *BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase inhibitors***

The DDDs are based on the standard starting dose in the treatment of chronic myeloid leukemia in early phase (chronic phase).

**L01EB *Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitors***

Substances inhibiting both HER2 and EGFR indicated for breast cancer are classified in L01EH.

The DDD for erlotinib is based on the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC).

**L01EC *B-Raf serine-threonine kinase (BRAF) inhibitors***

The DDD for encorafenib is based on the treatment of melanoma.

**L01ED *Anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) inhibitors***

Substances which are multi-targeted, but where ALK is considered the main target, are classified in this group.

**L01EE *Mitogen-activated protein kinase (MEK) inhibitors***

**L01EF *Cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitors***

**L01EG *Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) kinase inhibitors***

Parenteral formulations of sirolimus used for neoplastic diseases are classified in this group, while oral formulations used for organ transplantation are classified in L04AA.

**L01EH *Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) tyrosine kinase inhibitors***

Substances inhibiting both HER2 and EGFR indicated for breast cancer are classified in this group.

**L01EJ *Janus-associated kinase (JAK) inhibitors***

The DDDs are based on the treatment of myelofibrosis.

**L01EK *Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor (VEGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitors***

**L01EL *Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitors***

The DDD for ibrutinib is based on the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL) .

**L01EM *Phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase (Pi3K) inhibitors***

**L01EN *Fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitors***

**L01EX *Other protein kinase inhibitors***

This group comprises other protein kinase inhibitors which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. Substances which are multi-targeted without a clear main target are also classified in this group.

The DDD for cabozantinib is based on the treatment (tablets) of renal cell carcinoma and hepatocellular carcinoma.

The DDD for lenvatinib is based on the treatment of renal cell carcinoma.

The DDD for midostaurin is based on the treatment of acute myeloid leukaemia (AML).

**L01F MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES AND ANTIBODY DRUG CONJUGATES**

Monoclonal antibodies mainly indicated for the treatment of cancer are classified in this group.

Monoclonal antibodies combined with hyaluronidase are classified at the same 5th level as the plain monoclonal antibody.

**L01FA *CD20 (Clusters of Differentiation 20) inhibitors***

High strength products of ofatumumab used for the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL) are classified in this group, while low strength products for treatment of relapsing multiple sclerosis (RMS) are classified in L04AA.

**L01FB *CD22 (Clusters of Differentiation 22) inhibitors***

**L01FC *CD38 (Clusters of Differentiation 38) inhibitors***

**L01FD *HER2 (Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor 2) inhibitors***

**L01FE *EGFR (Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor) inhibitors***

**L01FF *PD-1/PDL-1 (Programmed cell death protein 1/death ligand 1) inhibitors***

**L01FG**    ***VEGF/VEGFR (Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor) inhibitors***

Bevacizumab used in age-related macular degeneration (AMD) is classified in S01LA08.

**L01FX**    ***Other monoclonal antibodies and antibody drug conjugates***

Dinutuximab and dinutuximab beta are classified at the same 5th level (L01FX06).

**L01X**    **OTHER ANTINEOPLASTIC AGENTS**

This group comprises antineoplastic preparations which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**L01XA**    ***Platinum compounds***

**L01XB**    ***Methylhydrazines***

**L01XD**    ***Sensitizers used in photodynamic/radiation therapy***

**L01XF**    ***Retinoids for cancer treatment***

**L01XG**    ***Proteasome inhibitors***

**L01XH**    ***Histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors***

**L01XJ**    ***Hedgehog pathway inhibitors***

**L01XK**    ***Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors***

**L01XL**    ***Antineoplastic cell and gene therapy***

**L01XX**    ***Other antineoplastic agents***

Also antineoplastic agents for dermatological use are classified here.

All asparaginases regardless of origins are classified in L01XX02. The 50-series codes are used for single substances due to lack of numbers.

Phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase (Pi3K) inhibitors are classified in L01EM.

**L01XY**    ***Combinations of antineoplastic agents***

All combinations of antineoplastic agents in L01 - *Antineoplastic agents* are classified in this group.

Combinations of antineoplastic agents with hyaluronidase are classified at the same 5th level as the combinations of antineoplastic agents without hyaluronidase.

## **L02 ENDOCRINE THERAPY**

Estrogens and progestogens used specifically in the treatment of neoplastic diseases are classified in this group. This means that some strengths may be classified in this group, while remaining strengths are classified in G03 - *Sex hormones and modulators of the genital system*.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of cancer (breast-, endometrial, and prostatic).

### **L02A HORMONES AND RELATED AGENTS**

Antigrowth hormones like somatostatin and octreotide, which are also used in the treatment of neoplastic diseases, are classified in H01CB.

#### **L02AA *Estrogens***

Polyestradiol and combined products, which contain polyestradiol and local anesthetics, are classified at the plain level L02AA02 - *polyestradiol phosphate*.

#### **L02AB *Progestogens***

#### **L02AE *Gonadotropin releasing hormone analogues***

See also H01CA - *Gonadotropin releasing hormones*.

A combi-pack containing leuprorelin (L02AE02) injection and bicalutamide (L02BB03) tablets indicated for prostate cancer is classified in L02AE51.

The DDD of 60 mcg for leuprorelin implant is based on 5 mg implant/90 days.

The depot DDD for triptorelin is based on treatment of prostatic cancer while the other DDD of 0.1 mg is based on the dose in one syringe used in women undergoing controlled ovarian hyperstimulation.

#### **L02AX *Other hormones***

### **L02B HORMONE ANTAGONISTS AND RELATED AGENTS**

#### **L02BA *Anti-estrogens***

#### **L02BB *Anti-androgens***

#### **L02BG *Aromatase inhibitors***

#### **L02BX *Other hormone antagonists and related agents***

### **L03 IMMUNOSTIMULANTS**

*Immunosuppressants, see L04A.*

#### **L03A IMMUNOSTIMULANTS**

Levamisole, which also affects the immune response, is classified in P02CE.

#### **L03AA *Colony stimulating factors***

The DDDs for pegfilgrastim (L03AA13) and lipegfilgrastim (L03AA14) are based on the declared amount of filgrastim and on the use of one single dose per cycle of chemotherapy. The DDDs for the other G-CSFs are based on daily dosing for six subsequent days.

#### **L03AB *Interferons***

Peginterferon alfa-2b in combination with ribavirin and peginterferon alfa-2a in combination with ribavirin are classified in L03AB60 and L03AB61, respectively.

The DDD for interferon alfa is based on the treatment of chronic active hepatitis B, whilst the DDD for interferon beta is based on the treatment of multiple sclerosis.

The DDDs of interferon beta-1a is based on i.m. administration.

#### **L03AC *Interleukins***

The DDD for aldesleukin is based on the use of 5 vials (6.5 mg) per treatment cycle of 33 days.

#### **L03AX *Other immunostimulants***

The DDD for tasonermin is based on single dose treatment.

The DDD of 0.5 mg (P) for histamine dihydrochloride is based on the total dose divided by days of first treatment cycle (42 days).

### **L04 IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS**

Immunosuppressants are defined as agents that completely or partly suppress one or more factors in the immunosystem.

#### **L04A IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS**

This group comprises immunosuppressants excl. corticosteroids.

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis of allograft transplant rejection if this is an approved indication.

#### **L04AA** *Selective immunosuppressants*

Antilymphocyte immunoglobulin from horse serum is classified in L04AA03.

Antithymocyte immunoglobulin from rabbit serum is classified in L04AA04.

Oral formulations of cladribine used in multiple sclerosis are classified in this group, while parenteral formulations for cancer are classified in L01BB.

Oral formulations of sirolimus used in organ transplantation are classified in this group, while parenteral formulations used for neoplastic diseases are classified in L01EG.

Low strength products of ofatumumab used in the treatment of relapsing multiple sclerosis (RMS) are classified in this group, while high strength products for treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL) are classified in L01FA.

The DDD for muromonam-CD3 is based on combination therapy in acute allograft rejection.

The DDDs for leflunomide, abatacept and tofacitinib are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

The DDDs for natalizumab, fingolimod, teriflunomide and alemtuzumab are based on the treatment of multiple sclerosis.

The DDD for efalizumab is based on the treatment of psoriasis.

The DDD for eculizumab is based on the dose given in the maintenance phase.

The DDDs for alemtuzumab and cladribine are based on the average calculated daily dose in the first two years (year 1 and 2) when all patients receive medication.

**L04AB** *Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ) inhibitors*

The DDDs for etanercept, infliximab and adalimumab are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

The DDD for cerolizumab pegol is based on the treatment of Crohn's Disease.

**L04AC** *Interleukin inhibitors*

Interleukin inhibitors used in asthma are classified in R03DX.

Dupilumab is classified in D11AH.

The DDDs for anakinra and tocilizumab are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

The DDD for daclizumab is based on the treatment of multiple sclerosis.

The DDDs for ustekinumab, ixekizumab and brodalumab are based on the treatment of psoriasis.

**L04AD** *Calcineurin inhibitors*

**L04AX** *Other immunosuppressants*

Oral formulations and prefilled syringe/pen of methotrexate are classified in this group. Parenteral formulations used for neoplastic diseases are classified in L01BA01.

Dimethyl fumarate indicated for multiple sclerosis or plaque psoriasis is classified here.

The DDD for thalidomide is based on the treatment of lepra.

The DDD for lenalidomide is based on the treatment of myelodysplastic syndromes.

The DDD for pomalidomide is based on the starting dose in the treatment of multiple myeloma.

The DDDs for methotrexate are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.



**M MUSCULO-SKELETAL SYSTEM**

**M01 ANTIINFLAMMATORY AND ANTIRHEUMATIC PRODUCTS**

*A Antiinflammatory and antirheumatic products, non-steroids*

*B Antiinflammatory/antirheumatic agents in combination*

*C Specific antirheumatic agents*

**M02 TOPICAL PRODUCTS FOR JOINT AND MUSCULAR PAIN**

*A Topical products for joint and muscular pain*

**M03 MUSCLE RELAXANTS**

*A Muscle relaxants, peripherally acting agents*

*B Muscle relaxants, centrally acting agents*

*C Muscle relaxants, directly acting agents*

**M04 ANTIGOUT PREPARATIONS**

*A Antigout preparations*

**M05 DRUGS FOR TREATMENT OF BONE DISEASES**

*B Drugs affecting bone structure and mineralization*

**M09 OTHER DRUGS FOR DISORDERS OF THE MUSCULO-SKELETAL SYSTEM**

*A Other drugs for disorders of the musculo-skeletal system*

## **M MUSCULO-SKELETAL SYSTEM**

### **M01 ANTIINFLAMMATORY AND ANTIRHEUMATIC PRODUCTS**

Corticosteroids, see H02 - *Corticosteroids for systemic use*.

#### **M01A ANTIINFLAMMATORY AND ANTIRHEUMATIC PRODUCTS, NON-STEROIDS**

This group comprises antiinflammatory and antirheumatic preparations for systemic use.

The substances in this group have a broad range of indications, however, they should be kept together in M01A.

NSAIDs in combination with paracetamol are classified in N02BE.

Disease Modifying Antirheumatic Drugs (DMARDs) see:

A07EC - *Aminosalicylic acid and similar agents*

L01BA - *Folic acid analogues*

L04AA - *Selective immunosuppressants*

L04AX - *Other immunosuppressants*

M01C - *Specific antirheumatic agents*

P01BA - *Aminoquinolines*

All preparations containing salicylic acid and derivatives are classified in N02BA - *Salicylic acid and derivatives*, as it is difficult to differentiate between use of salicylates in rheumatic conditions and other therapeutic uses.

Exception: Salicylates in combination with corticosteroids are classified in M01B.

Combinations of antiinflammatory/antirheumatic agents (e.g. corticosteroids) are classified in M01B.

Combinations with muscle relaxants are classified in M03B.

Combinations with antibacterials are classified in J01.

Antiinflammatory or antirheumatic agents in combination with opioids are classified in N02AJ - *Opioids in combination with non-opioid analgesics*.

Combined cold preparations with therapeutic levels of antiinflammatory agents are classified in this group at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

Combinations with drugs classified in A02B (e.g. esomeprazole) are classified in M01A using the 50-series.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, except for the coxibs (M01AH).

**M01AA *Butylpyrazolidines***

**M01AB *Acetic acid derivatives and related substances***

**M01AC *Oxicams***

Piroxicam and piroxicam-beta-cyclodextrin are given the same ATC 5th level code M01AC01.

The DDD for meloxicam is based on the treatment of osteoarthritis.

**M01AE *Propionic acid derivatives***

All plain ibuprofen preparations are classified in this group, even if they are only intended for use as pain relief.

Combinations of ibuprofen and paracetamol are classified in N02BE51.

Ketoprofen lysine is classified at the same ATC 5th level as ketoprofen.

Ibuprofen lysine is classified at the same 5th level as ibuprofen.

**M01AG *Fenamates***

Tolfenamic acid, used in the treatment of migraine, is classified here.

**M01AH *Coxibs***

Celecoxib used in FAP (familial adenomatous polyposis) is classified in L01XX.

Combinations of celecoxib and amlodipine are classified in C08CA51.

The DDDs for the coxibs are based on the treatment of osteoarthritis.

**M01AX *Other antiinflammatory and antirheumatic agents, non-steroids***

This group comprises antiinflammatory and antirheumatic drugs which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

The DDD for glucosamine refers to glucosamine sulfate.

**M01B ANTIINFLAMMATORY/ANTIRHEUMATIC AGENTS IN COMBINATION**

**M01BA** *Antiinflammatory/antirheumatic agents in combination with corticosteroids*

This group comprises antiinflammatory and antirheumatic drugs in combination with corticosteroids.

Combinations with salicylic acid derivatives are classified in this group.

The preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the anti-inflammatory/analgesic component. At each 5th level, different corticosteroids may occur.

**M01BX** *Other antiinflammatory/antirheumatic agents in combination with other drugs*

No 5th levels are established in this group. See comments regarding specific combinations under M01A.

All combinations of different antiinflammatory agents (excl. corticosteroids) are classified in this group.

**M01C SPECIFIC ANTIRHEUMATIC AGENTS**

This group comprises specific antirheumatic preparations.

Penicillamine, which is also used in conditions associated with impaired copper metabolism and as an antidote in copper poisoning, is classified in this group regardless of indication.

Other Disease Modifying Antirheumatic Drugs (DMARDs) see:

A07EC - *Aminosalicylic acid and similar agents*

L01BA - *Folic acid analogues*

L04AA - *Selective immunosuppressants*

L04AX - *Other immunosuppressants*

P01BA - *Aminoquinolines*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

**M01CA** *Quinolines*

Chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine are classified as antimalaria agents in P01BA.

**M01CB** *Gold preparations*

**M01CC** *Penicillamine and similar agents*

**M01CX** *Other specific antirheumatic agents*

**M02 TOPICAL PRODUCTS FOR JOINT AND MUSCULAR PAIN**

**M02A TOPICAL PRODUCTS FOR JOINT AND MUSCULAR PAIN**

This group comprises ointments, liniments, plasters, etc. which may produce symptomatic relief in joint and muscular pain.

No DDDs have been assigned in this group.

**M02AA *Antiinflammatory preparations, non-steroids for topical use***

All non-steroidal antiinflammatory derivatives for topical use are classified here, regardless of indication. Exception is a product containing diclofenac formulated as a 3% hyaluronic acid gel which is used in treatment of actinic keratoses. This particular formulation is classified in D11AX.

Combinations of non-steroidal antiinflammatory derivatives and other substances for topical use are classified together with plain preparations at the different 5th levels.

**M02AB *Capsaicin and similar agents***

Capsaicin products indicated for the symptomatic treatment of peripheral neuropathic pain (incl. postherpetic neuralgia) are classified in N01BX.

Combined preparations containing nonivamide used as a rubefacient are classified in this group on a 4th level.

**M02AC *Preparations with salicylic acid derivatives***

No separate 5th levels are established in this group.

Combinations of salicylic acid derivatives and other products are classified in this group.

**M02AX *Other topical products for joint and muscular pain***

This group comprises topical products, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Preparations with menthol are generally classified in D04 - *Antipruritics, incl. antihistamines, anesthetics, etc.*

### **M03 MUSCLE RELAXANTS**

This group comprises peripherally, centrally and directly acting muscle relaxants.

See also G04BD - *Drugs for urinary frequency and incontinence*.

#### **M03A MUSCLE RELAXANTS, PERIPHERALLY ACTING AGENTS**

This group comprises peripherally acting muscle relaxants such as curare alkaloids and suxamethonium.

The drugs in this group are mainly used together with anesthetics.

As for other drugs used in general anesthesia (see N01A), no DDDs have been established in this group because the doses used vary substantially.

##### **M03AA Curare alkaloids**

##### **M03AB Choline derivatives**

##### **M03AC Other quaternary ammonium compounds**

Sugammadex indicated for reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium or vecuronium is classified in V03AB - *Antidotes*.

##### **M03AX Other muscle relaxants, peripherally acting agents**

Botulinum toxin used e.g. for treatment of blepharospasm, hemifacial spasm and migraine is classified in this group.

#### **M03B MUSCLE RELAXANTS, CENTRALLY ACTING AGENTS**

This group comprises centrally acting muscle relaxants. Combined preparations are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series (comb. excl. psycholeptics), or the 70-series (comb. with psycholeptics):

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

Combinations with NSAIDs (M01A), analgesics (N02B) or corticosteroids (H02A) are classified here.

These drugs are used in different conditions associated with pain and rigidity in the muscles, joints etc.

DDDs for combination products, see list on the website

[www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

**M03BA** *Carbamic acid esters*

**M03BB** *Oxazol, thiazine, and triazine derivatives*

**M03BC** *Ethers, chemically close to antihistamines*

Orphenadrine citrate is classified here. Preparations containing orphenadrine chloride are classified in N04AB.

Combinations with e.g. paracetamol are classified in this group at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

**M03BX** *Other centrally acting agents*

Baclofen indicated for reduction of alcohol consumption is classified here.

**M03C** MUSCLE RELAXANTS, DIRECTLY ACTING AGENTS

This group comprises agents acting directly on the muscles such as dantrolene.

**M03CA** *Dantrolene and derivatives*

The DDD of dantrolene is based on the treatment of spasticity after spinal injury.

**M04** ANTIGOUT PREPARATIONS

**M04A** ANTIGOUT PREPARATIONS

The group is subdivided according to mode of action.

The DDDs are based on prophylaxis.

**M04AA** *Preparations inhibiting uric acid production*

Combinations of allupurinol and other antigout preparations are classified here.

Rasburicase for the treatment of hyperuricemia is classified in V03AF.

**M04AB** *Preparations increasing uric acid excretion*

**M04AC** *Preparations with no effect on uric acid metabolism*

Colchicine indicated for the reduction of atherothrombotic events is also classified in M04AC01.

**M04AX Other antigout preparations**

This group comprises preparations which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**M05 DRUGS FOR TREATMENT OF BONE DISEASES**

Drugs used for the treatment of bone diseases, see also:

- A11CC - *Vitamin D and analogues*
- A12A - *Calcium*
- A12AX - *Calcium, combinations with vitamin D and/or other drugs*
- A12CD - *Fluoride*
- G03C/G03F - *Estrogens/Progestogens and estrogens in combination*
- H05BA - *Calcitonins*

**M05B DRUGS AFFECTING BONE STRUCTURE AND MINERALIZATION**

**M05BA Bisphosphonates**

This group includes plain preparations. Combination packages with calcium for sequential use are classified in M05BB.

The DDDs for the bisphosphonates are based on the treatment of osteoporosis if this is an approved indication.

The DDDs for clodronic acid, pamidronic acid, zoledronic acid, parenteral etidronic acid and parenteral ibandronic acid are based on tumor induced hypercalcemia. The oral DDD for ibandronic acid is based on osteoporosis. Since the duration of the intravenous treatment courses with the bisphosphonates are varying, from 1-5 days, the DDDs for these parenteral formulations are assigned according to the total *course* dose. The DDDs for the oral formulations, which are mainly used for maintenance therapy, are assigned according to *daily* dosages.

The DDD for tiludronic acid is based on the treatment of Paget's disease.

**M05BB Bisphosphonates, combinations**

**M05BC Bone morphogenetic proteins**

**M05BX Other drugs affecting bone structure and mineralization**

The DDD for denosumab is based on the treatment of osteoporosis.



**M09 OTHER DRUGS FOR DISORDERS OF THE MUSCULO-SKELETAL SYSTEM**  
**M09A OTHER DRUGS FOR DISORDERS OF THE MUSCULO-SKELETAL SYSTEM**

This group comprises preparations used in disorders of the musculo-skeletal system, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**M09AA *Quinine and derivatives***

Hydroquinine, which is used in the treatment of nocturnal leg cramps is classified in this group.

Quinine is classified as an antimalaria agent in P01BC. Quinine in combination with psycholeptics is classified in M09AA72, since these combinations are used for treatment of nocturnal leg cramps.

Combinations used for cold conditions, containing quinine as an antipyretic, are classified in R05X.

**M09AB *Enzymes***

All enzyme preparations, which are used to treat inflammatory conditions in the musculo-skeletal system, are classified in this group.

**M09AX *Other drugs for disorders of the musculo-skeletal system***

Hyaluronic acid injection for intraarticular administration (e.g. 2.5 mg/ampoule) used in the treatment of arthritis is classified in this group. Hyaluronic acid injection used during surgical procedures on the eye (e.g. 4-20 mg/ampoule) is classified in S01K.

Mexiletine indicated for myotonic disorders is classified in C01BB.

The DDD for hyaluronic acid is based on intraarticular treatment of arthritis. The DDD is assigned according to daily dose even if the product is given as weekly injections.

**N NERVOUS SYSTEM**

**N01 ANESTHETICS**

- A *Anesthetics, general*
- B *Anesthetics, local*

**N02 ANALGESICS**

- A *Opioids*
- B *Other analgesics and antipyretics*
- C *Antimigraine preparations*

**N03 ANTIEPILEPTICS**

- A *Antiepileptics*

**N04 ANTI-PARKINSON DRUGS**

- A *Anticholinergic agents*
- B *Dopaminergic agents*

**N05 PSYCHOLEPTICS**

- A *Antipsychotics*
- B *Anxiolytics*
- C *Hypnotics and sedatives*

**N06 PSYCHOANALEPTICS**

- A *Antidepressants*
- B *Psychostimulants, agents used for ADHD and nootropics*
- C *Psycholeptics and psychoanaleptics in combination*
- D *Anti-dementia drugs*

**N07 OTHER NERVOUS SYSTEM DRUGS**

- A *Parasympathomimetics*
- B *Drugs used in addictive disorders*
- C *Antivertigo preparations*
- X *Other nervous system drugs*

## **N NERVOUS SYSTEM**

### **N01 ANESTHETICS**

No DDDs have been established in this group because the doses used vary substantially.

#### **N01A ANESTHETICS, GENERAL**

This group comprises agents which produce general anesthesia, surgical analgesia or neuroleptanalgesia. See also M03A - *Peripherally acting muscle relaxants*.

Benzodiazepine derivatives are classified in N05BA or N05CD.

##### **N01AA Ethers**

##### **N01AB Halogenated hydrocarbons**

##### **N01AF Barbiturates, plain**

This group comprises barbiturates used as anesthetics.

Barbiturates used as hypnotics/sedatives and as premedication, see N05CA - *Barbiturates, plain*.

##### **N01AG Barbiturates in combination with other drugs**

Only preparations used as anesthetics are classified in this group. See also N05CB - *Barbiturates, combinations*.

##### **N01AH Opioid anesthetics**

Opioid anesthetics in combination with other anesthetics are classified in this group at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

Transdermal, nasal and sublingual formulations of fentanyl are classified in N02AB.

Fentanyl in combination with bupivacaine for e.g. postoperative pain is classified in N01AH51 - *fentanyl, combinations*.

##### **N01AX Other general anesthetics**

This group comprises various plain and combined drugs used to produce anesthesia/analgesia, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Esketamine for nasal administration is classified in N06AX.

## N01B ANESTHETICS, LOCAL

Local anesthetics in this context mean anesthetics which only affect a local area as opposed to general anesthetics affecting the entire body.

Creams, plasters and sprays containing e.g. lidocaine or prilocaine used as anesthetics/analgesics or in premature ejaculation are classified in N01BB.

Local anesthetics for dermatological use such as treatment of pruritus, minor burns and insect stings are classified in D04AB - *Anesthetics for topical use*.

Antihemorrhoidals containing anesthetics, see C05AD - *Local anesthetics*.

Stomatologicals with anesthetics, see A01AD.

Combinations of corticosteroids and anesthetics for oral local treatment, see A01AC.

Throat preparations with anesthetics, see R02AD - *Anesthetics, local*.

Ophthalmological anesthetics, see S01HA.

Combinations with e.g. epinephrine are classified at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

### **N01BA** *Esters of aminobenzoic acid*

Plasters and creams containing lidocaine and tetracaine are classified in N01BB52.

Combinations of tetracaine and oxymetazoline for nasal application used as local dental anesthetics are classified in N01BA53.

### **N01BB** *Amides*

Lidocaine injections used as antiarrhythmics are classified in C01BB.

### **N01BC** *Esters of benzoic acid*

Cocaine nasal solution for induction of local anesthesia of the mucous membranes through the nasal cavities is classified here.

### **N01BX** *Other local anesthetics*

Capsaicin products indicated for the symptomatic treatment of peripheral neuropathic pain (incl. postherpetic neuralgia) are classified in N01BX. See also M02AB.

## N02 ANALGESICS

This group comprises general analgesics and antipyretics.

All salicylic acid derivatives except combinations with corticosteroids (M01B) or opioids (N02AJ) are classified in N02BA - *Salicylic acid and derivatives*, as it is difficult to differentiate between the use of salicylates in rheumatic conditions and other therapeutic uses of salicylates.

All plain ibuprofen preparations are classified in M01A, even if they are only intended for use as pain relief.

There are a number of combined preparations, which contain analgesics and psycholeptics. These are classified in N02, as pain relief must be regarded as the main indication. Analgesics used for specific indications are classified in the respective ATC groups. E.g.:

A03D/

A03EA-*Antispasmodic/psycholeptics/analgesic combinations*

M01 -*Antiinflammatory and antirheumatic products*

M02A -*Topical products for joint and muscular pain*

M03 -*Muscle relaxants*

See comments to these groups.

Lidocaine indicated for postherpetic pain is classified in N01BB.

## N02A OPIOIDS

This group comprises strong analgesics of the opiate type and analgesics with similar structure or action.

Sufentanil, which is also used as an epidural analgesic or in postoperative pain, is classified in N01AH.

Fentanyl in combination with bupivacaine used in e.g. postoperative pain is classified in N01AH51 - *fentanyl, combinations*.

Combinations with antispasmodics are classified in N02AG.

The DDDs in this group are based on the treatment of pain.

The DDD for oral morphine is higher than the parenteral DDD because of lower bioavailability.

## **N02AA** *Natural opium alkaloids*

This group includes natural and semi-synthetic opiates.

All plain morphine preparations are classified in this group.

Opium, see also A07DA - *Antipropulsives*.

Plain codeine preparations are classified in R05D - *Cough suppressants, excl. combinations with expectorants*, while dihydrocodeine is classified in N02AA. Codeine or dihydrocodeine in combination with other analgesics or NSAIDs are classified in N02AJ - *Opioids in combination with non-opioid analgesics*.

Other combinations with e.g. caffeine, antihistamines and anticholinergic agents are classified in N02AA. Combinations of codeine with psycholeptics are classified in N02AA79.

The DDDs are based on approved dose recommendations.

When establishing DDDs for combination products in the 50-series, all analgesic components are taken into consideration.

The DDD, expressed in UD, should normally not exceed the approved dose recommendations for any of the components.

See list of DDDs for combination products, [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

## **N02AB** *Phenylpiperidine derivatives*

Fentanyl patches are classified in this group whereas parenteral formulations are classified in N01AH.

The transdermal DDD for fentanyl is based on the amount delivered per 24 hours.

## **N02AC** *Diphenylpropylamine derivatives*

Methadone, levomethadone and levacetylmethadol are classified in N07BC - *Drugs used in opioid dependence*.

Dextropropoxyphene in combination with a muscle relaxant is classified in M03B.

Different DDDs are assigned for different dextropropoxyphene salts based on their different solubility.

## **N02AD** *Benzomorphan derivatives*

**N02AE** *Oripavine derivatives*

High strength formulations (above 0.4 mg) of buprenorphine used in opioid dependence are classified in N07BC.

**N02AF** *Morphinan derivatives*

**N02AG** *Opioids in combination with antispasmodics*

Preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the analgesic. At each level different antispasmodics may occur.

The DDDs in this group are as far as possible equipotent to the DDD for parenteral morphine.

**N02AJ** *Opioids in combination with non-opioid analgesics*

Includes combinations with opioids and other non-opioid analgesics (e.g. paracetamol, acetylsalicylic acid or NSAIDs). At each 5th level other active ingredients such as e.g. caffeine, vitamins and antihistamines are allowed.

Various combinations of codeine with other analgesics are included in N02AJ09 - *codeine and other non-opioid analgesics*. For example combinations containing three analgesic components (codeine, paracetamol and ibuprofen) are classified in N02AJ09.

Various combinations of tramadol with other analgesics are included in N02AJ15 - *tramadol and other non-opioid analgesics*. For example combinations containing tramadol and ibuprofen (or ketorolac or diclofenac) are classified in N02AJ15.

Combinations of codeine, non-opioid analgesics and psycholeptics are classified in N02AA79 - *codeine, combinations with psycholeptics*. Other analgesics may be included in the 70-series codes.

All plain and combination products containing dextropropoxyphen are classified in N02AC.

The DDDs are based on approved dose recommendations.

When establishing DDDs for combination products all analgesic components are taken into consideration.

The DDD, expressed in UD, should normally not exceed the approved dose recommendations for any of the components.

See list of DDDs for combination products, [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

## **N02AX** *Other opioids*

The group comprises opioids, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

## **N02B** OTHER ANALGESICS AND ANTIPYRETICS

See general considerations under N02.

Combinations with opioids should be classified in N02AJ - *Opioids in combination with non-opioid analgesics*. Combinations with codeine, non-opioid analgesics and psycholeptics are classified in N02AA79.

Combinations with opioids and antispasmodics are classified in N02AG - *Opioids in combination with antispasmodics*.

Combinations with muscle relaxants are classified in M03B.

Combined preparations which contain more than one analgesic, should be classified by using the following ranking:

1. Phenacetin
2. Bucetin
3. Dipyroceryl
4. Paracetamol
5. Acetylsalicylic acid
6. Phenazone
7. Salicylamide
8. Propyphenazone

This means that a product containing paracetamol and phenazone should be classified in N02BE51 - *paracetamol, combinations excl. psycholeptics* and not in N02BB51 - *phenazone, combinations excl. psycholeptics*.

Dextropropoxyphene plain, and in combination with other analgesics, is classified in N02AC.

Cold preparations with therapeutic levels of analgesics are classified in this group at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

Preparations are subdivided on 4th levels according to chemical structure.

Combinations with ascorbic acid (i.e. 50 mg or more per unit dose) are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

Products containing less than 50 mg per unit dose are classified at the plain level of the analgesic component.



The DDDs are based on approved dose recommendations.

When establishing DDDs for combination products in the 50-series, all analgesic components are taken into consideration.

The DDD expressed in UD, should normally not exceed the approved dose recommendations for any of the components. See list of DDDs for combinations products, [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

### **N02BA** *Salicylic acid and derivatives*

All salicylic acid derivatives including some commonly regarded as non-steroid antiinflammatory drugs, e.g. diflunisal, are classified in this group. See comment under N02 - *Analgesics*.

Salicylic acid derivatives in combination with corticosteroids are classified in M01B. Acetylsalicylic acid preparations specifically intended for use as antithrombotic agents are classified in B01AC.

Lysine acetylsalicylate is classified at the same 5th level as acetylsalicylic acid.

Combinations with antiemetics are classified here.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of pain and not on use in rheumatic diseases.

DDD for combined preparations, see N02B.

### **N02BB** *Pyrazolones*

### **N02BE** *Anilides*

Propacetamol, a prodrug of paracetamol is classified at a separate ATC 5th level in this group.

Benorilate, which is an ester of acetylsalicylic acid and paracetamol, is classified in N02BA.

Combinations of paracetamol and e.g. ibuprofen are classified in N02BE51.

Paracetamol in combination with orphenadrine (citrate) is classified in M03BC.

### **N02BF** *Gabapentinoids*

### **N02BG** *Other analgesics and antipyretics*

This group comprises analgesics, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

The DDD for ziconotide is based on intrathecal administration.

DDDs established for products classified in *N02BG10 - cannabinoids* are available on the list of DDDs for combinations on the website [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

## N02C ANTIMIGRAINE PREPARATIONS

This group comprises preparations specifically used in the prophylaxis and treatment of migraine. Analgesics, see N02A and N02B.

Beta blocking agents, see C07.

Antivertigo preparations, see N07.

Cyproheptadine, see R06A - *Antihistamines for systemic use*.

Tolfenamic acid, see M01AG - *Fenamates*.

Indometacin in combination with prochlorperazine and caffeine is classified in M01AB51 - *Indometacin, combinations*.

Botulinum toxin used in the prophylactic treatment of migraine is classified in M03AX01.

### **N02CA Ergot alkaloids**

Ergot alkaloids for gynecological use, see G02A and G02CB.

See also C04AE - *Ergot alkaloids*.

Dihydroergotamine, which is also used in the treatment of hypotension, is classified in this group.

Combinations of dihydroergotamine and etilefrine are classified in C01CA.

The DDD for ergotamine is based on the treatment of acute migraine attacks, whereas the DDDs for dihydroergotamine and methysergide are based on prophylaxis.

The DDD for dihydroergotamine nasal spray is based on the treatment of acute migraine attacks.

### **N02CB Corticosteroid derivatives**

The DDDs for corticosteroid derivatives are based on prophylaxis of migraine.

**N02CC** *Selective serotonin (5HT<sub>1</sub>) agonists*

The DDDs for the selective serotonin (5HT<sub>1</sub>) agonists are based on the recommended initial dose in acute attacks of migraine.

**N02CD** *Calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP) antagonists*

The DDDs for the CGRP antagonists are based on the prophylaxis of migraine.

**N02CX** *Other antimigraine preparations*

This group comprises antimigraine preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Clonidine low strength tablets (e.g. 25 mcg) are classified here, even if the indication also may be “opioid withdrawal symptoms”.

The DDDs for the substances in this group are based on the prophylaxis of migraine.

**N03** **ANTIEPILEPTICS**

**N03A** **ANTIEPILEPTICS**

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of epilepsy.

Combined preparations are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

The DDDs for the antiepileptics are based on combination therapy.

**N03AA** *Barbiturates and derivatives*

Barbiturates used mainly as hypnotics/sedatives are classified in N05C - *Hypnotics and sedatives*.

Phenobarbital, which is used both as an antiepileptic and as a sedative, is classified in this group.

Combinations with phenytoin are classified in N03AB.

**N03AB** *Hydantoin derivatives*

Combinations of phenytoin and barbiturates are classified in this group.

**N03AC** *Oxazolidine derivatives*

**N03AD** *Succinimide derivatives*

**N03AE** *Benzodiazepine derivatives*

Clonazepam is classified in this group.

All other benzodiazepines are classified as anxiolytics in N05B (e.g. diazepam) or hypnotics/sedatives in N05C (e.g. midazolam).

**N03AF** *Carboxamide derivatives*

**N03AG** *Fatty acid derivatives*

**N03AX** *Other antiepileptics*

This group comprises antiepileptics, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Fenfluramine indicated for the treatment of seizures associated with Dravet syndrome is classified here.

Gabapentin and pregabalin are classified in N02BF *Gabapentinoids*.

The DDDs for stiripentol and fenfluramine are based on the treatment of children with a bodyweight of 20 kg.

**N04** **ANTI-PARKINSON DRUGS**

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease and related conditions, including drug-induced parkinsonism.

The DDDs are based on recommended doses for the long-term treatment of symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

No separate DDDs are established for oral depot formulations.

**N04A** **ANTICHOLINERGIC AGENTS**

**N04AA** *Tertiary amines*

**N04AB** *Ethers chemically close to antihistamines*

Orphenadrine chloride is classified in this group, while orphenadrine citrate is classified in M03BC.

**N04AC** *Ethers of tropine or tropine derivatives*

**N04B** **DOPAMINERGIC AGENTS**

**N04BA** *Dopa and dopa derivatives*

Combinations with decarboxylase inhibitors and other dopaminergic agents are classified here.

The DDD for the combination of levodopa and decarboxylase inhibitor is based on the content of levodopa, see ATC index.

**N04BB Adamantane derivatives**

**N04BC Dopamine agonists**

Bromocriptine used in parkinsonism is classified in this group (e.g. tablets of 5 mg and 10 mg). Low strength bromocriptine tablets (e.g. 2.5 mg) used as a prolactine inhibitor are classified in G02CB - *Prolactine inhibitors*.

Cabergoline used in parkinsonism is classified in this group (e.g. tablets of 1 mg). Low strength cabergoline tablets (0.5 mg) used as a prolactine inhibitor are classified in G02CB.

Lisuride in high strength formulations (e.g. 0.2 mg tablets), which is also used in the treatment of Parkinsonism, are classified in G02CB while lisuride in low strength formulations (e.g. 25 mcg tablets) are classified in N02CA.

**N04BD Monoamine oxidase B inhibitors**

**N04BX Other dopaminergic agents**

This group comprises dopaminergic agents which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

The combination of levodopa, decarboxylase inhibitor and COMT inhibitor is classified in N04BA - *Dopa and dopa derivatives*.

**N04C OTHER ANTIPARKINSON DRUGS**

**N04CX Other antiparkinson drugs**

**N05 PSYCHOLEPTICS**

The group is divided into therapeutic subgroups:

N05A - *Antipsychotics*

N05B - *Anxiolytics*

N05C - *Hypnotics and sedatives*

**N05A ANTIPSYCHOTICS**

This group comprises drugs with antipsychotic actions (i.e. neuroleptics).

Reserpine is classified in C02 - *Antihypertensives*.

Antipsychotics in combination with antidepressants are classified in N06C - *Psycholeptics and psychoanaleptics in combination*.

The group is subdivided mainly according to chemical structure.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of psychosis. The substances in this group are sometimes used for other indications in much lower doses.

For depot injections, the DDDs are based on the average recommended doses divided by the dosing interval.

**N05AA** *Phenothiazines with aliphatic side-chain*

**N05AB** *Phenothiazines with piperazine structure*

**N05AC** *Phenothiazines with piperidine structure*

**N05AD** *Butyrophenone derivatives*

The DDD for parenteral droperidol is based on treatment of post-operative nausea and vomiting.

**N05AE** *Indole derivatives*

Isoindoles are classified here.

**N05AF** *Thioxanthene derivatives*

**N05AG** *Diphenylbutylpiperidine derivatives*

**N05AH** *Diazepines, oxazepines, thiazepines and oxepines*

**N05AL** *Benzamides*

Levosulpiride used as a propulsive is classified in this group.

**N05AN** *Lithium*

The DDD is based on the prophylaxis of mania or depression.

Antidepressants, see N06A.

**N05AX** *Other antipsychotics*

This group comprises antipsychotics which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

## N05B ANXIOLYTICS

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of neuroses and psychosomatic disorders associated with anxiety and tension, e.g. benzodiazepines.

See also:

N05A - *Antipsychotics*

N05C - *Hypnotics and sedatives*

Usually the presence of an anxiolytic (or other psycholeptics) in combined preparations must be regarded as being of secondary importance and the preparations should be classified in the respective therapeutic groups (e.g. A03C - *Antispasmodics in combination with psycholeptics*, N02 - *Analgesics*).

Combined preparations used mainly for the treatment of anxiety are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of anxiety.

### **N05BA *Benzodiazepine derivatives***

Benzodiazepines used mainly in the treatment of sleep disturbances are classified in N05C - *Hypnotics and sedatives*.

Clonazepam used in the treatment of epilepsy is classified in N03 - *Antiepileptics*.

The parenteral DDD for chlordiazepoxide is higher than the oral DDD due to lower bioavailability for intramuscular injections.

### **N05BB *Diphenylmethane derivatives***

### **N05BC *Carbamates***

### **N05BD *Dibenzo-bicyclo-octadiene derivatives***

### **N05BE *Azaspirodecanedione derivatives***

### **N05BX *Other anxiolytics***

This group comprises anxiolytics which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

## N05C HYPNOTICS AND SEDATIVES

This group comprises preparations with mainly sedative or hypnotic actions.

Melatonin receptor agonists are also classified in this group.

See also:

N05A - *Antipsychotics*

N05B - *Anxiolytics*

R06A - *Antihistamines for systemic use*

Combined preparations are classified at separate 4th levels, N05CB and N05CX.

Regarding classification of combined preparations, see comments under N05B - *Anxiolytics*.

Combined preparations with barbiturates are mainly classified in A03 (mainly antispasmodic effect) or in N02 (mainly analgesic effect).

Combined preparations with barbiturates which remain in N05C are mainly "neurostabilizers".

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

The DDDs are based on use of the drugs as hypnotics.

The DDD for melatonin is based on dose recommendations in EU for the 2 mg depot tablet.

### **N05CA** *Barbiturates, plain*

This group comprises barbiturates used for insomnia.

Preparations used as premedication are also classified in this group.

Barbiturates used in general anesthesia are classified in N01A - *General anesthetics*.

Barbiturates used mainly in the treatment of epilepsy, e.g. phenobarbital, are classified in N03 - *Antiepileptics*.

Combined preparations are classified in N05CB, see comment under N05C.

### **N05CB** *Barbiturates, combinations*

This group comprises combined preparations with mainly sedative action. Combinations with analgesics etc., see comments under N05C - *Hypnotics and sedatives*.

Tetrabamate is classified here.



**N05CC** *Aldehydes and derivatives*

**N05CD** *Benzodiazepine derivatives*

Benzodiazepine derivatives used mainly in sleeping disorders are classified in this group.

All midazolam medicinal products are classified here.

See also N05BA.

The DDDs for nasal and sublingual formulations (oromucosal administration) of midazolam are based on acute treatment of seizures in patients with epilepsy.

**N05CE** *Piperidinedione derivatives*

**N05CF** *Benzodiazepine related drugs*

**N05CH** *Melatonin receptor agonists*

The DDD for melatonin is based on dose recommendations for the 2 mg depot tablet approved in Europe.

**N05CM** *Other hypnotics and sedatives*

This group includes drugs, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**N05CX** *Hypnotics and sedatives in combination, excl. barbiturates*

All combination products mainly used in sleeping disorders are classified in this group, except combinations with barbiturates, see N05CB.

**N06** **PSYCHOANALEPTICS**

This group comprises antidepressants, psychostimulants, nootropics anti-dementia drugs and combinations with psycholeptics.

Antiobesity preparations are classified in A08 - *Antiobesity preparations, excl. diet products*.

**N06A** **ANTIDEPRESSANTS**

This group comprises preparations used in the treatment of endogenous and exogenous depressions.

The group is subdivided mainly according to mode of action. The various antidepressants have different modes of action, and the classification will not reflect the exact mode of action of the various antidepressants.

Lithium, see N05AN - *Lithium*

Combination with psycholeptics, see N06C.

The DDDs are based on treatment of moderately severe depressions.

**N06AA** *Non-selective monoamine reuptake inhibitors*

**N06AB** *Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors*

**N06AF** *Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, non-selective*

**N06AG** *Monoamine oxidase A inhibitors*

**N06AX** *Other antidepressants*

This group includes antidepressants, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Esketamine for nasal administration is classified here, while injections are classified in N01AX.

**N06B** PSYCHOSTIMULANTS, AGENTS USED FOR ADHD AND NOOTROPICS

Some drugs used in the treatment of narcolepsy are classified here.

Nootropics are classified in N06BX.

Clonidine and guanfacine also used in ADHD are classified in C02AC.

**N06BA** *Centrally acting sympathomimetics*

Amphetamine is classified in this group, see comment under A08AA - *Centrally acting antiobesity products*.

Combinations of amphetamine and dexamphetamine are classified in N06BA01.

**N06BC** *Xanthine derivatives*

Caffeine in combination with respiratory stimulants is classified in R07AB.

**N06BX** *Other psychostimulants and nootropics*

This group comprises substances regarded as nootropics.

Psychostimulants, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups, are also classified here.

Cyprodenate (deanol cyclohexylpropionate) is classified in N06BX04.

The DDD for idebenone is based on treatment of Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy.

**N06C PSYCHOLEPTICS AND PSYCHOANALEPTICS IN COMBINATION**

Combinations of e.g. antidepressants and anxiolytics are classified in this group.

***N06CA Antidepressants in combination with psycholeptics***

Preparations are classified at 5th levels according to the antidepressant. At each level various psycholeptics may occur.

***N06CB Psychostimulants in combination with psycholeptics***

**N06D ANTI-DEMENTIA DRUGS**

***N06DA Anticholinesterases***

***N06DX Other anti-dementia drugs***

**N07 OTHER NERVOUS SYSTEM DRUGS**

This group comprises other nervous system drugs, which cannot be classified in the preceding 2nd levels in ATC group N.

**N07A PARASYMPATHOMIMETICS**

See also cholinergics used in glaucoma therapy, S01EB.

This group includes various drugs used for different indications. The DDDs are therefore established individually for each ATC 5th level.

***N07AA Anticholinesterases***

***N07AB Choline esters***

***N07AX Other parasympathomimetics***

**N07B DRUGS USED IN ADDICTIVE DISORDERS**

This group comprises drugs used for maintenance treatment of addictive disorders. Drugs used for detoxification are classified in V03A - *All other therapeutic products*.

***N07BA Drugs used in nicotine dependence***

Bupropion is classified in N06A - *Antidepressants*.

The DDD for chewing gum and lozenges is identical.

**N07BB** *Drugs used in alcohol dependence*

Naltrexone, which is also used in the treatment of opioid dependence, see N07BC, is classified in this group.

The DDD for nalmefene is based on the recommended dose on treatment days.

**N07BC** *Drugs used in opioid dependence*

Low strength formulations of buprenorphine (equal or less than 0.4 mg) are classified in N02AE. Naltrexone is classified in N07BB - *Drugs used in alcohol dependence*.

Combinations of buprenorphine and naloxone are classified here.

Morphine used for treatment of opioid dependence is classified in N02AA01.

**N07C** ANTIVERTIGO PREPARATIONS

This group comprises agents mainly used in the treatment of vertigo.

See also:

A04A - *Antiemetics and antinauseants*

C04AX - *Other peripheral vasodilators*

N02C - *Antimigraine preparations*

N05A - *Antipsychotics*

R06A - *Antihistamines for systemic use*

The DDDs are based on treatment of vestibular symptoms.

**N07CA** *Antivertigo preparations*

Cinnarizine in combination with diphenhydramine teoclate or dihydroergocristine are classified in N07CA52.

The DDD for the N07CA52 refers to cinnarizine and is based on the combination of cinnarizine and diphenhydramine teoclate.

**N07X** OTHER NERVOUS SYSTEM DRUGS

**N07XA** *Gangliosides and ganglioside derivatives*

**N07XX** *Other nervous system drugs*

This group contains substances, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Combinations of metenkefalin and tridecactide is classified in N07XX (no

ATC 5th level).

Combinations of dextromethorphan and quinidine are classified in N07XX59.

Dimethyl fumarate indicated for multiple sclerosis or plaque psoriasis is classified in L04AX.

All products containing tafamidis, regardless of indication, are classified here.

Calcium, magnesium and potassium salts of oxybate are classified in N07XX04 - *sodium oxybate*.

The DDD for tafamidis is based on treatment of nerve damage caused by transthyretin amyloidosis.

**P ANTIPARASITIC PRODUCTS, INSECTICIDES AND REPELLENTS**

**P01 ANTIPROTOZOALS**

- A Agents against amoebiasis and other protozoal diseases*
- B Antimalarials*
- C Agents against leishmaniasis and trypanosomiasis*

**P02 ANTHELMINTICS**

- B Antitrepatodals*
- C Antinematodal agents*
- D Anticestodals*

**P03 ECTOPARASITICIDES, INCL. SCABICIDES, INSECTICIDES AND REPELLENTS**

- A Ectoparasiticides, incl. scabicides*
- B Insecticides and repellents*

## **P ANTIPARASITIC PRODUCTS, INSECTICIDES AND REPELLENTS**

The group is subdivided according to types of parasites.

### **P01 ANTIPROTOZOALS**

#### **P01A AGENTS AGAINST AMOEBIASIS AND OTHER PROTOZOAL DISEASES**

This group comprises drugs mainly used for amoeba infections and other protozoal diseases such as giardiasis and trichomoniasis.

##### ***P01AA Hydroxyquinoline derivatives***

All combined preparations containing clioquinol are classified in this group. Formulations of chlorquinaldol and clioquinol for dermatological use are classified in D08AH.

##### ***P01AB Nitroimidazole derivatives***

Nitroimidazole derivatives used for amoebiasis, trichomoniasis and giardiasis are classified in this group. Formulations for vaginal administration are classified in G01AF. Parenteral formulations mainly used for treatment of anaerobic bacterial infections are classified in J01XD. Fixed combination packages for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* are classified in A02BD.

Combinations with antibacterials are classified in J01R.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of amoebiasis, giardiasis and trichomoniasis. The duration of the treatment periods is not taken into consideration.

##### ***P01AC Dichloroacetamide derivatives***

This group comprises luminal amoebicides.

The DDDs in this group are based on treatment of luminal amoebiasis.

##### ***P01AR Arsenic compounds***

This group comprises e.g. glycoarsol. Combinations containing clioquinol are classified in P01AA.

##### ***P01AX Other agents against amoebiasis and other protozoal diseases***

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. Combinations with clioquinol are classified in P01AA.

**P01B ANTIMALARIALS**

This group comprises drugs mainly used for treatment and prophylaxis of malaria.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of malaria, except for proguanil, which is used for prophylaxis only. For some substances the DDDs are expressed as amount of base. These are indicated in the ATC index.

**P01BA *Aminoquinolines***

Combinations with clioquinol are classified in P01AA. Combinations with glycobiarsol are classified in P01AR.

The DDDs are based on the average daily dose for the treatment period.

**P01BB *Biguanides***

The DDD for proguanil is based on the daily dose given for prophylaxis of malaria. The DDD for the fixed combination of *proguanil and atovaquone* is based on the treatment of acute malaria, while the DDD for the fixed combination of *proguanil and chloroquine* is based on prophylaxis of malaria, see list of DDDs for combination products [www.whooc.no](http://www.whooc.no).

**P01BC *Methanolquinolines***

Combined preparations with quinine and psycholeptics used for treatment of nocturnal cramps are classified in M09AA.

Combined preparations with quinine for symptomatic relief in cold conditions are classified in R05X.

Hydroquinine is classified in M09AA.

**P01BD *Diaminopyrimidines***

The DDD for pyrimethamine is based on combination therapy with a sulphonamide for the treatment of malaria.

**P01BE *Artemisinin and derivatives, plain***

The parenteral DDD for arthemether is based on monotherapy.

The DDDs for artemisinin derivatives are based on combination therapy with other antimalarials.



**P01BF** *Artemisinin and derivatives, combinations*

**P01BX** *Other antimalarials*

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. Combinations of diphenhydramine and diethyltoluamide are classified at the plain level for diphenhydramine in D04AA.

The DDD for halofantrine is based on a one-day (12h) treatment.

**P01C** AGENTS AGAINST LEISHMANIASIS AND TRYPANOSOMIASIS

**P01CA** *Nitroimidazole derivatives*

Nitroimidazole derivatives used for trypanosomiasis are classified in this group. Other nitroimidazole derivatives, see P01AB.

The DDD for benznidazole is based on the treatment of trypanosomiasis.

The DDD for fexinidazole is based on the average daily dose for the total 10 days course.

**P01CB** *Antimony compounds*

The DDDs are expressed as pentavalent antimony ( $Sb^{5+}$ ) used in the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis.

**P01CC** *Nitrofuran derivatives*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of trypanosomiasis.

**P01CD** *Arsenic compounds*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of trypanosomiasis.

**P01CX** *Other agents against leishmaniasis and trypanosomiasis*

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

The DDD for pentamidine isethionate is based on amount given per injection. The DDD for suramin sodium is based on the average daily dose for the treatment period.

## **P02 ANTHELMINTICS**

The anthelmintics are subdivided according to the main type of worms (i.e. trematodes, nematodes and cestodes) causing the infections.

### **P02B ANTITREMATODALS**

This group comprises drugs mainly used for trematode infections such as e.g. schistosomiasis. Niclosamide, which is also used in trematode infections, is classified in P02DA.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of schistosomiasis.

#### **P02BA *Quinoline derivatives and related substances***

#### **P02BB *Organophosphorous compounds***

Metrifonate is administered every second week. The DDD is the dose divided by the dosing interval.

#### **P02BX *Other antitrepatodal agents***

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

### **P02C ANTINEMATODAL AGENTS**

This group comprises drugs mainly used for nematode infections.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of different nematode infections e.g. ascariasis (roundworm) and hookworm infections.

#### **P02CA *Benzimidazole derivatives***

#### **P02CB *Piperazine and derivatives***

E.g. diethylcarbamazine is classified in this group.

The DDD for diethylcarbamazine is based on the treatment of lymphatic filariasis.

#### **P02CC *Tetrahydropyrimidine derivatives***

#### **P02CE *Imidazothiazole derivatives***

#### **P02CF *Avermectines***

**P02CX** *Other antinematodals*

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**P02D** ANTICESTODALS

This group comprises drugs mainly used for cestode infections. Praziquantel and mebendazole which are also used in cestode infections, are classified in P02BA and P02CA respectively.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of cestode (tapeworm) infections.

**P02DA** *Salicylic acid derivatives*

**P02DX** *Other anticestodals*

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**P03** **ECTOPARASITICIDES, INCL. SCABICIDES, INSECTICIDES AND REPELLENTS**

No DDDs are assigned in this group. Substances classified in this group are for topical use and the consumption figures for these preparations could be expressed in e.g. grams of preparations regardless of strength.

**P03A** ECTOPARASITICIDES, INCL. SCABICIDES

This group comprises preparations used against scabies, lice and other ectoparasites.

The active substances with direct effect on the ectoparasiticides are decisive for the classification.

**P03AA** *Sulfur containing products*

Combinations with e.g. benzyl benzoate are classified in this group.

Combinations with chlorine compounds, see P03AB. If sulfur is the only substance with direct effect, the product is classified in P03AA.

**P03AB** *Chlorine containing products*

Combinations with sulfur compounds are classified in this group.

**P03AC** *Pyrethrines, incl. synthetic compounds*

This group comprises various pyrethrum products, including synthetic pyrethrinoids and combinations with e.g. piperonyl butoxide.

Combinations with malathion are classified here.

**P03AX** *Other ectoparasiticides, incl. scabicides*

Crotamiton preparations are classified in D04AX - *Other antipruritics*.

Combinations of benzyl benzoate and sulfur containing compounds are classified in P03AA.

Dimeticone used as antifatulent is classified in A03AX13 - *silicones*.

P03B INSECTICIDES AND REPELLENTS

**P03BA** *Pyrethrines*

**P03BX** *Other insecticides and repellents*

**R        RESPIRATORY SYSTEM**

**R01        NASAL PREPARATIONS**

*A    Decongestants and other nasal preparations for topical use*

*B    Nasal decongestants for systemic use*

**R02        THROAT PREPARATIONS**

*A    Throat preparations*

**R03        DRUGS FOR OBSTRUCTIVE AIRWAY DISEASES**

*A    Adrenergics, inhalants*

*B    Other drugs for obstructive airway diseases, inhalants*

*C    Adrenergics for systemic use*

*D    Other systemic drugs for obstructive airway diseases*

**R05        COUGH AND COLD PREPARATIONS**

*C    Expectorants, excl. combinations with cough suppressants*

*D    Cough suppressants, excl. combinations with expectorants*

*F    Cough suppressants and expectorants, combinations*

*X    Other cold preparations*

**R06        ANTIHISTAMINES FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

*A    Antihistamines for systemic use*

**R07        OTHER RESPIRATORY SYSTEM PRODUCTS**

*A    Other respiratory system products*

## **R RESPIRATORY SYSTEM**

Inhaled antiinfectives are classified in ATC group J - *Antiinfectives for systemic use*.

### **R01 NASAL PREPARATIONS**

Varenicline nasal spray used for dry eye disease is classified in S01XA.

#### **R01A DECONGESTANTS AND OTHER NASAL PREPARATIONS FOR TOPICAL USE**

This group comprises preparations for local treatment in nasal congestion (e.g. sympathomimetics) or for prophylaxis and treatment of allergic rhinitis (e.g. corticosteroids, cromoglicate preparations). Most of the products are nasal drops, nasal sprays or nasal inhalants. Formulations approved for eye, ear and nose are classified in S03.

See also R01B - *Nasal decongestants for systemic use*, and R06 - *Antihistamines for systemic use*.

The DDDs are based on treatment of both nostrils.

#### **R01AA *Sympathomimetics, plain***

Small amounts of antiseptics etc. are allowed at each 5th level.

Combinations with antibiotics, antihistamines, ipatropium bromide etc. are classified in R01AB, while combinations with corticosteroids are classified in R01AD.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of acute rhinitis.

#### **R01AB *Sympathomimetics, combinations excl. corticosteroids***

Combinations with e.g. antibiotics, antihistamines and ipatropium bromide are classified in this group.

This group also includes preparations with two or more sympathomimetics. These combinations are classified in a ranking according to the ATC codes, e.g. substances classified in R01AB01 take precedence over substances classified in R01AB02 etc.

Combinations of phenylephrine and lerimazoline are classified in R01AB01.

Combinations of tetracaine and oxymetazoline for nasal application used as local dental anesthetics are classified in N01BA.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of rhinitis. DDDs are given in volume (i.e. ml). Most of the products classified in this group are combinations with antihistamines. So far, all these products are given a fixed DDD of 0.8 ml.

**R01AC *Antiallergic agents, excl. corticosteroids***

Antihistamines, cromoglicate disodium and analogues are classified here. Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in R01AD.

The DDD of cromoglicic acid is based on the prophylaxis of rhinitis. The DDDs of the antihistamines are based on the maintenance treatment of rhinitis.

**R01AD *Corticosteroids***

Combinations of corticosteroids with antiinfectives, sympathomimetics, antihistamines etc. are classified in this group at separate 5th levels by using the 50-series.

Fluticasone propionate is classified in R01AD08.

The DDDs are mainly based on the starting dose in the treatment of rhinitis.

**R01AX *Other nasal preparations***

This group comprises antiinfectives, antiseptics, mucolytics etc. which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

ATC level R01AX10 is an old level where rather obsolete nasal preparations and sodium chloride nasal products are classified. The level R01AX30 is for nasal combination products which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Combinations of ipatropium bromide and xylometazoline are classified in R01AB.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of rhinitis.

**R01B NASAL DECONGESTANTS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises preparations for systemic use in vasomotoric or allergic rhinitis etc., excl. plain antihistamines (see R06).

Combinations with antihistamines are classified in this group.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of rhinitis.

**R01BA** *Sympathomimetics*

**R02** **THROAT PREPARATIONS**

**R02A** THROAT PREPARATIONS

Throat preparations and mouth preparations are classified in the groups R02 and A01 according to assumed main therapeutic use. Preparations used in common minor infections of mouth and throat are classified in R02, while preparations used in gingivitis, stomatitis etc. are classified in A01 - *Stomatological preparations*.

Preparations for the treatment of symptoms both in mouth and throat are classified in R02 - *Throat preparations*.

The DDDs are based on the treatment of common minor infections of mouth and throat. For combination products, DDDs are given as fixed doses of 6 UD (6 tablets).

**R02AA** *Antiseptics*

See also A01AB - *Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment*.

At each 5th level combinations with anesthetics are allowed.

The combination dichlorobenzyl alcohol and amyl-m-cresol is classified in R02AA03.

**R02AB** *Antibiotics*

See also A01AB - *Antiinfectives and antiseptics for local oral treatment*.

Combinations of antibiotics and antiseptics are classified in this group.

At each 5th level combinations with anesthetics and/or steroids are allowed.

Antibiotics for systemic use, see J01.

**R02AD** *Anesthetics, local*

This group comprises e.g. throat lozenges containing local anesthetics. Dental anesthetics for local application are classified in N01B - *Anesthetics, local*.

Combinations of anesthetics and antiseptics/antibiotics are classified in R02AA/R02AB respectively.

**R02AX** *Other throat preparations*

Combinations of benzydamine and cetylpyridinium are classified at the same 5th level as benzydamine.



The DDD for flurbiprofen is based on lozenges and mouth spray which have equivalent dose recommendations.

**R03** **DRUGS FOR OBSTRUCTIVE AIRWAY DISEASES**  
**R03A** ADRENERGICS, INHALANTS

It is complicated to decide DDDs for the different dosage forms and even the different inhalation *devices* of the same dosage form. It has been shown that certain inhalation devices give a better deposition of the active ingredient in the lungs. This gives a better clinical effect, and therefore the active ingredients can be used in lower dosages. It has been decided not to take this aspect into consideration when assigning DDDs in this group, since the picture is very complex and satisfactory comparative documentation is not always available. Accordingly, only one DDD is assigned for one dosage form of a substance (e.g. powder inhalation).

For some substances, the labelling of the strength of identical inhalation products may differ between countries. In some countries, metered dose (measured as the amount of substance released from the inhaler with the mouthpiece removed) is used while in other countries delivered dose (measured as the amount of substance released from the inhaler with the mouthpiece in place) is used in the labelling. Delivered dose will usually be lower than metered dose. This is important to take into considerations when linking DDD information to the products in the different countries.

The DDDs for inhalation aerosol and inhalation powder of the same substance are in most cases given the same DDD value. The DDDs for inhalation solutions are, however, different from these and much higher, partly because less amount of the active ingredient will reach the target organ, and partly because this dosage form often is used in more severe asthma.

**R03AA** *Alpha- and beta-adrenoreceptor agonists*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of asthma.

**R03AB** *Non-selective beta-adrenoreceptor agonists*

The DDDs are based on the treatment of asthma.

**R03AC** *Selective beta-2-adrenoreceptor agonists*

The DDDs are mainly based on the treatment of asthma.

The DDDs for formoterol and salmeterol inhalation powders are based on metered dose, even though products containing these substances could be declared as delivered dose.

The DDD for indacaterol is based on the treatment of COPD (Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease).

**R03AH** *Combinations of adrenergics*

See comments to R03AK.

**R03AK** *Adrenergics in combination with corticosteroids or other drugs, excl. anticholinergics*

The DDDs for combination products are based on the maintenance treatment of severe asthma or COPD (Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease). The assigned DDDs cannot always be compared with the DDDs assigned for plain preparations. See list of DDDs for combination products; [www.whocc.no](http://www.whocc.no).

**R03AL** *Adrenergics in combination with anticholinergics incl. triple combinations with corticosteroids*

**R03B** OTHER DRUGS FOR OBSTRUCTIVE AIRWAY DISEASES, INHALANTS

This group comprises all drugs for obstructive airway diseases for inhalation excl. adrenergics (R03A).

See comment under R03A.

**R03BA** *Glucocorticoids*

Combinations with adrenergics are classified in R03AK.

The combination of ciclosonide and tiotropium bromide is classified in R03BB54.

The DDDs are based on the starting dose in moderate to severe asthma.

**R03BB** *Anticholinergics*

Combinations with adrenergics are classified in R03AL.

The combination of tiotropium bromide and ciclosonide is classified in R03BB54.

The DDDs are based on the maintenance treatment of asthma.

The DDDs for tiotropium bromide and umeclidinium bromide are based on treatment of COPD (Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease).

The DDD for tiotropium bromide inhalation powder is based on tiotropium, delivered dose.

The DDD for aclidinium bromide inhalation powder is based on aclidinium, delivered dose.

The DDD for glycopyrronium bromide inhalation powder is based on glycopyrronium, delivered dose.

The DDD for umeclidinium bromide inhalation powder is based on umeclidinium, delivered dose.

**R03BC *Antiallergic agents, excl. corticosteroids***

The DDDs are based on the prophylaxis of asthma.

DDD for inhalation aerosol and inhalation powder differ in this group, due to differences in dosage recommendations for these dosage forms.

**R03BX *Other drugs for obstructive airway diseases, inhalants***

**R03C ADRENERGICS FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises adrenergics for systemic use indicated for e.g. bronchial asthma. Sympathomimetics used in the treatment of hypertension, see C01CA. Fenoterol infusion only intended for repression of labour is classified in G02CA. Combinations with xanthines are classified in R03DB. Combinations with other anti-asthmatics are classified in R03CK - *Adrenergics and other drugs for obstructive airway diseases*.

**R03CA *Alpha- and beta-adrenoreceptor agonists***

Ephedrine injections are classified in C01CA.

**R03CB *Non-selective beta-adrenoreceptor agonists***

Isoprenaline for systemic use is classified in this group only if bronchial asthma is the only indication for the preparation, otherwise in C01C - *Cardiac stimulants excl. cardiac glycosides*.

**R03CC** *Selective beta-2-adrenoreceptor agonists*

**R03CK** *Adrenergics and other drugs for obstructive airway diseases*

Combinations of adrenergics and other drugs for obstructive airway diseases e.g. bronchial asthma and COPD (excl. xanthines, see R03DB) are classified here.

**R03D** OTHER SYSTEMIC DRUGS FOR OBSTRUCTIVE AIRWAY DISEASES

Theophyllines are classified in this group. Other respiratory stimulants are classified in R07AB - *Respiratory stimulants*.

Corticosteroids for systemic use, see H02.

Sympathomimetics for systemic treatment of rhinitis, see R01BA.

This group comprises mainly the xanthines. The DDDs for these substances are based on treatment of obstructive lung diseases.

**R03DA** *Xanthines*

A number of preparations containing e.g. theophylline are classified in this group even if they do not have asthma as an indication.

Combinations of xanthines and other agents (except adrenergics, see R03DB - *Xanthines and adrenergics*) are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series (e.g. mucolytics).

**R03DB** *Xanthines and adrenergics*

All combinations of xanthines and adrenergics are classified in this group.

**R03DC** *Leukotriene receptor antagonists*

Combinations with antihistamines (R06A) are classified in this group.

**R03DX** *Other systemic drugs for obstructive airway diseases*

This group comprises preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Interleukin inhibitors used in asthma are classified in this group.

**R05** COUGH AND COLD PREPARATIONS

This group comprises a large number of preparations, most of which are combined preparations.

Cold preparations containing therapeutic levels of antiinfectives should be classified in ATC group J - *Antiinfectives for systemic use*.

Cold preparations with therapeutic levels of analgesics/anti-inflammatory agents should be classified in the respective N02/M01 groups.

Cold preparations with both antiinfectives and analgesics should be classified in ATC group J - *Antiinfectives for systemic use*.

Cold preparations with minimal amounts of analgesics are classified in R05X - *Other cold preparations*.

See also R01 - *Nasal preparations*, R02 - *Throat preparations*, and R03D - *Other systemic drugs for obstructive airway diseases*.

Fixed DDDs are assigned for combinations. These DDDs are based on an average dose regimen of three times daily, and dosages in the upper area of the recommended dose ranges are chosen. The strengths of the various components are not taken into consideration. E.g. 6 UD (= 30 ml) is the fixed DDD for products where the recommended dose is 5-10 ml each time administered.

## R05C EXPECTORANTS, EXCL. COMBINATIONS WITH COUGH SUPPRESSANTS

This group comprises preparations with expectorants and mucolytics.

Combined preparations are classified at separate 5th levels using the code number 10. These may also contain e.g. antihistamines. Combinations with adrenergics, e.g. ambroxol and clenbuterol, used in e.g. bronchial asthma are classified in R03C - *Adrenergics for systemic use*.

Preparations, which contain small amounts of herbal extracts, menthol etc., are regarded as plain preparations.

### **R05CA** *Expectorants*

All combined products of expectorants are classified in R05CA10.

### **R05CB** *Mucolytics*

Mesna in i.v. formulations used for the prophylaxis of urothelial toxicity is classified in V03AF. Mesna used as a mucolytic agent (e.g. administered by a nebuliser) is classified here.

All combined products of mucolytics are classified in R05CB10.

Combinations with xanthines are classified in R03DA.

Combinations with antiinflammatory agents are classified in M01.

For acetylcysteine, the DDD for inhalation solution is higher than for the oral formulation, due to differences in the dosages recommended.

R05D COUGH SUPPRESSANTS, EXCL. COMBINATIONS WITH EXPECTORANTS

Combined preparations are classified at separate 5th levels using the code number 20 (R05DA20 and R05DB20). These may also contain bronchodilating agents, antihistamines etc.

Combinations with expectorants, see R05F.

Combinations with xanthines, see R03DA.

Preparations, which contain small amounts of herbal extracts, menthol etc., are not regarded as combined preparations.

**R05DA *Opium alkaloids and derivatives***

Plain codeine, also when used as an analgesic, is classified in this group.

Plain dihydrocodeine products, also used as cough suppressants, are classified in N02AA.

All combined products of opium alkaloids and derivatives, are classified in R05DA20.

Combinations with analgesics are classified in N02.

**R05DB *Other cough suppressants***

All combined products of other cough suppressants are classified in R05DB20.

Levocloperastine is classified together with cloperastine in R05DB21.

R05F COUGH SUPPRESSANTS AND EXPECTORANTS, COMBINATIONS

In addition to cough suppressants and expectorants, the preparations may contain bronchodilating agents, antihistamines etc. Combinations, which contain respiratory stimulants, e.g. theophylline, should be classified in R03DA.

**R05FA *Opium derivatives and expectorants***

**R05FB *Other cough suppressants and expectorants***

R05X OTHER COLD PREPARATIONS

This group comprises cold preparations with various ingredients, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. Combinations with therapeutic amounts of various ingredients (e.g. quinine as an antipyretic, antihistamines, ascorbic acid and caffeine) are classified in this group. Various remedies for symptomatic relief in cough and cold, e.g. inhalants with menthol, camphora, thymol etc. are also classified here.

## **R06 ANTIHISTAMINES FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

### **R06A ANTIHISTAMINES FOR SYSTEMIC USE**

This group comprises plain and combined antihistamine preparations for systemic use. Antihistamines used in motion sickness are classified in this group. Other preparations used in motion sickness, see A04 - *Antiemetics and antinauseants*.

See also N07C - *Antivertigo preparations*.

Combined preparations (incl. combinations with hydroxyzine) are classified at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

Combinations of antihistamines are classified at a separate 4th level, R06AK.

Antihistamines are also included in combined preparations classified in other groups:

Combinations with analgesics - N02

Combinations with xanthines - R03DA

Combinations with leukotriene receptor antagonists - R03DC.

Combinations with expectorants - R05C

Combinations with nasal decongestants for systemic use - R01B

Combinations with cough suppressants - R05D

Allergen extracts, see V01.

The group is subdivided according to chemical structure.

For some of the substances, different dosage forms are given different DDDs, due to differences in bioavailability.

#### **R06AA *Aminoalkyl ethers***

Combinations of diphenhydramine and dimenhydrinate are classified in R06AA52 diphenhydramine, combinations.

Combinations with codeine are classified in N02AA.

Combinations of cinnarizine and dimenhydrinate (diphenhydramine teoclate) are classified in N07CA - *Antivertigo preparations*.

The DDD of doxylamine is based on the treatment of insomnia.

#### **R06AB *Substituted alkylamines***

**R06AC** *Substituted ethylene diamines*

**R06AD** *Phenothiazine derivatives*

**R06AE** *Piperazine derivatives*

Cinnarizine and flunarizine are classified in N07C - *Antivertigo preparations*.

**R06AK** *Combinations of antihistamines*

**R06AX** *Other antihistamines for systemic use*

**R07** **OTHER RESPIRATORY SYSTEM PRODUCTS**

**R07A** OTHER RESPIRATORY SYSTEM PRODUCTS

This group comprises lung surfactants and respiratory stimulants.

Caffeine is classified in N06B - *Psychostimulants, agents used for ADHD and nootropics*. See also comments under R07AB - *Respiratory stimulants*.

**R07AA** *Lung surfactants*

This group comprises surface-tension lowering agents used in respiratory distress syndrome. Combinations of different lung surfactants are classified in R07AA30, e.g. sinapultide in combination with other lung surfactants are classified here.

The DDDs of colfosceril palmitate and natural phospholipids are based on the treatment of respiratory distress syndrome in neonates, and correspond to the treatment of children weighing 1.6 kg.

**R07AB** *Respiratory stimulants*

Centrally acting respiratory stimulants mainly used for asthma and similar respiratory diseases (e.g. theophylline) are classified in R03D. Other respiratory stimulants are classified here. This group includes plain and combined preparations.

Combinations with respiratory stimulants and caffeine are classified in this group. Plain caffeine preparations are classified in N06B - *Psychostimulants, agents used for ADHD and nootropics*.

This group includes various drugs used on different indications. The DDDs are therefore established individually for each ATC 5th level.



**R07AX** *Other respiratory system products*

This group comprises preparations used for respiratory disorders, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Nitric oxide is classified here, other medical gases, see V03AN.

## **S**      **SENSORY ORGANS**

### **S01**      **OPHTHALMOLOGICALS**

- A*    *Antiinfectives*
- B*    *Antiinflammatory agents*
- C*    *Antiinflammatory agents and antiinfectives in combination*
- E*    *Antiglaucoma preparations and miotics*
- F*    *Mydriatics and cycloplegics*
- G*    *Decongestants and antiallergics*
- H*    *Local anesthetics*
- J*    *Diagnostic agents*
- K*    *Surgical aids*
- X*    *Other ophthalmologicals*

### **S02**      **OTOLOGICALS**

- A*    *Antiinfectives*
- B*    *Corticosteroids*
- C*    *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*
- D*    *Other otologicals*

### **S03**      **OPHTHALMOLOGICAL AND OTOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

- A*    *Antiinfectives*
- B*    *Corticosteroids*
- C*    *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*
- D*    *Other ophthalmological and otological preparations*

## **S**      **SENSORY ORGANS**

A formulation approved both for use in the eye/ear is classified in S03. Formulations approved for eye, ear and nose are also classified in S03. Formulations only licensed for use in the eye or the ear are classified in S01 and S02, respectively.

### **S01**      **OPHTHALMOLOGICALS**

Most of the drugs in this group are topical preparations. Systemic preparations with clear ophthalmological indications are also classified in this group.

Small amounts of antiseptics in eye preparations do not influence the classification, e.g. benzalconium.

See also S03 - *Ophthalmological and otological preparations*.

DDDs have been assigned for antiglaucoma preparations only.

#### **S01A**      **ANTIINFECTIVES**

This group comprises plain and combined antiinfective preparations for ophthalmological use.

Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in S01CA - *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*.

#### **S01AA**      ***Antibiotics***

Combinations of different antibiotics (incl. sulfonamides) are classified at a separate 5th level: S01AA30.

Combinations with other drugs (e.g. sympathomimetics) are classified at a separate 5th level: S01AA20.

Combinations with antiinflammatory agents are classified in group S01C.

#### **S01AB**      ***Sulfonamides***

Combinations with antibiotics are classified in S01AA.

#### **S01AD**      ***Antivirals***

#### **S01AE**      ***Fluoroquinolones***

#### **S01AX**      ***Other antiinfectives***

This group comprises antiinfective preparations for ophthalmological use, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups. Products containing boric acid, also in low strengths, are classified in this group.

Preparations containing benzalconium as the only active substance are classified here, on the 4th level.

**S01B ANTIINFLAMMATORY AGENTS**

This group comprises all eye preparations with non-steroidal antiinflammatory agents and corticosteroids, plain and combinations. Combinations with antiinfectives are classified in S01C - *Antiinflammatory agents and antiinfectives in combination*.

**S01BA *Corticosteroids, plain***

**S01BB *Corticosteroids and mydriatics in combination***

Combinations, which in addition contain anticholinergics, are classified here.

Combinations, which in addition contain antiinfectives, are classified in S01CB - *Corticosteroids/antiinfectives/mydriatics in combination*.

**S01BC *Antiinflammatory agents, non-steroids***

**S01C ANTIINFLAMMATORY AGENTS AND ANTIINFECTIVES IN COMBINATION**

This group comprises all eye preparations, which contain corticosteroids or non-steroidal antiinflammatory agents and antiinfectives. Preparations may also contain additional drugs.

**S01CA *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination***

The preparations are classified according to the corticosteroid. Different antiinfectives may occur at each 5th level.

**S01CB *Corticosteroids/antiinfectives/mydriatics in combination***

This group is built up as S01CA.

**S01CC *Antiinflammatory agents, non-steroids and antiinfectives in combination***

**S01E ANTIGLAUCOMA PREPARATIONS AND MIOTICS**

This group comprises preparations for local and systemic treatment of glaucoma.

Drugs used for producing miosis are classified in this group, even if the main indication is not glaucoma.

The DDDs are based on single dose (or single package) and administration frequencies. A single dose is defined as two eye drops (one in each eye) corresponding to 0.1 ml. For eye drops administered once daily the DDD is 0.1 ml, for eye drops administered twice daily the DDD is 0.2 ml, etc. For single use packages one dose is the volume of one package. This also applies for combinations. In eye ointments one dose corresponds to about 10 mm (20 mg) per eye thus corresponding to 40 mg for both eyes.

**S01EA**    ***Sympathomimetics in glaucoma therapy***

Preparations containing parasympathomimetics in combination with epinephrine, are classified in S01EB.

**S01EB**    ***Parasympathomimetics***

Combinations with beta blocking agents are classified in S01ED.

The DDD for pilocarpine lamellas has been obtained by dividing two lamellas by seven days (the recommended dose is 1 lamella/eye/week).

**S01EC**    ***Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors***

Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors used for different indications are classified in this group.

Diclofenamide for treatment of periodic paralysis is classified here.

The DDDs are based on the average recommended doses in the treatment of chronic glaucoma.

**S01ED**    ***Beta blocking agents***

Combinations of beta blocking agents and other drugs, e.g. pilocarpine, are classified in this group, at separate 5th levels using the corresponding 50-series.

**S01EE**    ***Prostaglandin analogues***

Combinations with beta blocking agents are classified in S01ED.

Bimatoprost indicated for treatment of hypotrichosis of the eyelashes is classified here.

**S01EX**    ***Other antiglaucoma preparations***

S01F MYDRIATICS AND CYCLOPLEGICS

**S01FA *Anticholinergics***

Combinations with sympathomimetics are classified in this group.

Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in S01BB.

**S01FB *Sympathomimetics excl. antiglaucoma preparations***

Phenylephrine in high strength is classified in this group, see also S01GA.

Sympathomimetics used in glaucoma therapy, see S01EA.

S01G DECONGESTANTS AND ANTIALLERGICS

This group comprises drugs used to treat symptoms of e.g. allergy.

**S01GA *Sympathomimetics used as decongestants***

This group comprises sympathomimetics used as decongestants, plain and in combination. E.g. low strength phenylephrine in combination with other drugs is classified in this group. See also S01FB.

Ophthalmic solutions of oxymetazoline for the treatment of acquired blepharoptosis are also classified in S01GA04 - *oxymetazoline*.

**S01GX *Other antiallergics***

Combinations of cromoglicic acid and antihistamines are classified in S01GX51.

S01H LOCAL ANESTHETICS

This group comprises topical drugs used as local anesthetics in the eye.

Local anesthetics for other indications are classified in N01B - *Anesthetics, local*. Other exceptions, see comments to N01B.

Combinations of local anesthetics and diagnostic agents, e.g. fluorescein, are classified in S01J.

**S01HA *Local anesthetics***

S01J DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS

This group comprises topical drugs used for diagnosing diseases in the eye. Mydriatics and cycloplegics used as diagnostic aids are classified in S01F.

Diagnostic agents for systemic use for ophthalmological diagnoses, e.g. fluorescein injection, are classified in V04CX - *Other diagnostic agents*.

**S01JA**    **Colouring agents**

**S01JX**    **Other ophthalmological diagnostic agents**

**S01K**    SURGICAL AIDS

This group comprises drugs used in ophthalmological surgery.

Miotics are classified in S01E - *Antiglaucoma preparations and miotics*.

Mydriatics and cycloplegics are classified in S01F.

**S01KA**    **Viscoelastic substances**

Hyaluronic acid injection used during surgical procedures on the eye (e.g. 4-20 mg/ampoule) is classified in this group. Hyaluronic acid injection for intra-articular administration (e.g. 2.5 mg/ampoule) used in the treatment of arthritis is classified in M09A - *Other drugs for disorders of the musculo-skeletal system*.

Hypromellose is classified in this group. Hypromellose used as artificial tears is, however, classified in S01XA20.

**S01KX**    **Other surgical aids**

Preparations containing e.g. enzymes (chymotrypsin) for use in eye surgery, are classified in this group.

Mitomycin used in glaucoma surgery is classified in L01DC03.

**S01L**    OCULAR VASCULAR DISORDER AGENTS

**S01LA**    **Antineovascularisation agents**

**S01X**    OTHER OPHTHALMOLOGICALS

This group comprises products, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups e.g. artificial tears, products for use with contact lenses, drugs against cataract etc.

All products containing boric acid are classified in S01AX - *Other antiinfectives*.

**S01XA**    **Other ophthalmologicals**

Hypromellose is classified in S01XA20, if it is used as artificial tears. See also S01KA.

Varenicline nasal spray used for dry eye disease is classified in this group.

## **S02 OTOLOGICALS**

Small amounts of antiseptics in otological preparations do not influence the classification, e.g. benzalconium.

See also S03 - *Ophthalmological and otological preparations*.

No DDDs are assigned in this group.

### **S02A ANTIINFECTIVES**

This group comprises plain and combined antiinfective preparations for otological use.

Combined preparations are classified at a separate 5th level - S02AA30 - *antiinfectives, combinations*. This level includes combinations of different antiinfectives and combinations of antiinfectives/other substances.

Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in S02C - *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*.

#### **S02AA *Antiinfectives***

Ciprofloxacin, declared as ear drops, is classified here.

### **S02B CORTICOSTEROIDS**

This group comprises all otological preparations with corticosteroids, plain and combinations, except combinations with antiinfectives. These are classified in S02C - *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*.

#### **S02BA *Corticosteroids***

### **S02C CORTICOSTEROIDS AND ANTIINFECTIVES IN COMBINATION**

This group comprises all otological preparations, which contain corticosteroids and antiinfectives. Preparations may also contain additional drugs.

#### **S02CA *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination***

The preparations are classified according to the corticosteroid. Different antiinfectives may occur at each 5th level.



S02D OTHER OTOLOGICALS

This group comprises ear preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**S02DA Analgesics and anesthetics**

This group comprises e.g. preparations with analgesics and/or local anesthetics.

**S02DC Indifferent preparations**

This group comprises e.g. oil-preparations used to remove ear wax.

**S03 OPHTHALMOLOGICAL AND OTOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS**

This group comprises preparations which can be used in both eye and ear.

Formulations approved for eye, ear and nose should also be classified in S03.

Small amounts of antiseptics (e.g. benzalconium) do not influence the classification.

No DDDs are assigned in this group.

S03A ANTIINFECTIVES

**S03AA Antiinfectives**

This group comprises plain and combined antiinfective preparations for use in eye/ear.

Combined preparations are classified at a separate 5th level, S03AA30 - *antiinfectives, combinations*. This level includes combinations of different antiinfectives and combinations of antiinfectives and other substances.

Combinations with corticosteroids are classified in S03C - *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*.

S03B CORTICOSTEROIDS

This group comprises all eye/ear preparations with corticosteroids, plain and combinations, except combinations with antiinfectives. These are classified in S03C - *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination*.

**S03BA Corticosteroids**

S03C CORTICOSTEROIDS AND ANTIINFECTIVES IN COMBINATION

This group comprises all eye/ear preparations which contain corticosteroids and antiinfectives. Preparations may also contain additional drugs.

**S03CA *Corticosteroids and antiinfectives in combination***

The preparations are classified according to the corticosteroid. Different antiinfectives may occur at each 5th level.

S03D OTHER OPHTHALMOLOGICAL AND OTOLOGICAL PREPARATIONS

This group comprises eye/ear preparations, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**V VARIOUS**

**V01 ALLERGENS**

*A Allergens*

**V03 ALL OTHER THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS**

*A All other therapeutic products*

**V04 DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS**

*B Urine tests*

*C Other diagnostic agents*

**V06 GENERAL NUTRIENTS**

*A Diet formulations for treatment of obesity*

*B Protein supplements*

*C Infant formulas*

*D Other nutrients*

**V07 ALL OTHER NON-THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS**

*A All other non-therapeutic products*

**V08 CONTRAST MEDIA**

*A X-ray contrast media, iodinated*

*B X-ray contrast media, non-iodinated*

*C Magnetic resonance imaging contrast media*

*D Ultrasound contrast media*

**V09 DIAGNOSTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS**

*A Central nervous system*

*B Skeleton*

*C Renal system*

*D Hepatic and reticulo endothelial system*

*E Respiratory system*

*F Thyroid*

*G Cardiovascular system*

*H Inflammation and infection detection*

*I Tumour detection*

*X Other diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*

**V10 THERAPEUTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS**

*A Antiinflammatory agents*

*B Pain palliation (bone seeking agents)*

*X Other therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals*

**V20 SURGICAL DRESSINGS**

## V VARIOUS

This group comprises many different types of drugs, and assigning DDDs are difficult. Very few DDDs are assigned in this group.

### V01 ALLERGENS

V01A ALLERGENS

#### V01AA *Allergen extracts*

This group comprises preparations mainly used in hyposensitisation. Preparations for diagnostic use, e.g. prick and scratch tests, are classified in V04CL.

This group is divided according to type of allergen, e.g. grass pollen, tree pollen, fungi etc. *Artemisia vulgaris* allergens are classified in V01AA10 - flowers.

Oral and parenteral pharmaceutical forms are classified in the same ATC 5th level.

### V03 ALL OTHER THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS

V03A ALL OTHER THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS

#### V03AB *Antidotes*

Sugammadex indicated for reversal of neuromuscular blockade induced by rocuronium or vecuronium is classified here.

Hydroxocobalamine is also classified in B03BA.

Medicinal charcoal is classified in A07BA.

Atropine is classified in A03BA.

Penicillamine, which is also used in copper poisoning, is classified in M01CC.

Silibinin, which is also used in amanita poisoning, is classified in A05BA at the same 5th level as silymarin.

Anticholinesterases, which are used as curare antidotes, are classified in N07AA.

Clonidine low strength tablets (e.g. 25 mcg) are classified in N02CX, even if the indication also may be "opioid withdrawal symptoms".

Both DL-methionine and L-methionine are included in the ATC 5th level V03AB26 - *methionine*.

Naltrexone is classified in N07BB - *Drugs used in alcohol dependence*.

Combinations of oxycodone and naloxone are classified in N02AA - *Natural opium alkaloids*.

Combinations of buprenorphine and naloxone are classified in N07BC - *Drugs used in opioid dependence*.

**V03AC** *Iron chelating agents*

**V03AE** *Drugs for treatment of hyperkalemia and hyperphosphatemia*

Plain calcium products also used in hyperphosphatemia are classified in A12AA.

The DDD for lanthanum carbonate is expressed as lanthanum and is equivalent to 4.3 g lanthanum carbonate.

The DDD for ferric citrate is based on the recommended dose for chronic kidney disease patients not on dialysis.

The DDD for patiromer calcium is based on the recommended starting dose.

**V03AF** *Detoxifying agents for antineoplastic treatment*

Mesna in i.v. formulations used for the prophylaxis of urothelial toxicity are classified in this group. Mesna used as a mucolytic agent (e.g. administered by a nebuliser) is classified in R05CB.

Rasburicase is classified here, other agents (e.g. febuxostat) for treatment of hyperuricaemia, see M04AA.

Glutathione is classified in V03AB - *Antidotes*.

The DDDs for calcium folinate, calcium levofolate, sodium folinate and sodium levofolate are based on the combined treatment with high doses of methotrexate.

The DDD for amifostine is based on the use as an adjunct in antineoplastic therapy.

**V03AG** *Drugs for treatment of hypercalcemia*

Sodium cellulose phosphate is classified here.

See also M05 - *Drugs for treatment of bone diseases*.

Cinacalcet indicated for secondary hyperparathyroidism is classified in H05BX.

**V03AH** *Drugs for treatment of hypoglycemia*

Oral preparations containing diazoxide for treatment of hypoglycemia, are classified in this group, while parenteral preparations used for treatment of hypertension, are classified in C02DA.

**V03AK** *Tissue adhesives*

Tissue adhesives, e.g. cyanoacrylate based adhesives (not containing fibrinogen or other local hemostatics) are classified here.

Fibrin sealants providing hemostasis at the site of application should be classified in B02BC.

Human fibrinogen for systemic use is classified in B02BB01.

**V03AM** *Drugs for embolisation*

**V03AN** *Medical gases*

Nitric oxide used in respiratory conditions is classified in R07AX.

**V03AX** *Other therapeutic products*

This group comprises agents, which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

Nalfurafine and difelikefalin indicated for pruritus in chronic kidney disease are classified here.

**V03AZ** *Nerve depressants*

Ethanol used in ablation procedures is classified here.

**V04** **DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS**

V04B URINE TESTS

V04C OTHER DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS

**V04CA** *Tests for diabetes*

**V04CB** *Tests for fat absorption*

**V04CC** *Tests for bile duct patency*

Pancreozymin is classified in V04CK.

**V04CD** *Tests for pituitary function*

See also V04CM - *Tests for fertility disturbances*.

Metyrapone for the management of Cushing's syndrome is also classified in this group.

**V04CE** *Tests for liver functional capacity*

**V04CF** *Tuberculosis diagnostics*

**V04CG** *Tests for gastric secretion*

**V04CH** *Tests for renal function and ureteral injuries*

**V04CJ** *Tests for thyroidea function*

**V04CK** *Tests for pancreatic function*

V04CK01 - *secretin* includes synthetic, pork, and human secretin.

**V04CL** *Tests for allergic diseases*

See also V01.

**V04CM** *Tests for fertility disturbances*

**V04CX** *Other diagnostic agents*

Aminolevulinic acid used for photodynamic diagnosis is classified in L01XD04.

**V06** **GENERAL NUTRIENTS**

This group comprises nutrients for oral use, incl. preparations used in feeding with stomach tube. Solutions for parenteral nutrition are classified in B05BA.

**V06A** DIET FORMULATIONS FOR TREATMENT OF OBESITY

See also A08 - *Antiobesity preparations, excl. diet products*.

**V06AA** *Low-energy diets*

**V06B** PROTEIN SUPPLEMENTS

**V06C** INFANT FORMULAS

This group comprises preparations used in metabolic disorders. Milk substitutes are classified V06DF.

**V06CA** *Nutrients without phenylalanine*



V06D OTHER NUTRIENTS

This group comprises a major part of the general nutrients.

**V06DA Carbohydrates/proteins/minerals/vitamins, combinations**

**V06DB Fat/carbohydrates/proteins/minerals/vitamins, combinations**

**V06DC Carbohydrates**

**V06DD Amino acids, incl. combinations with polypeptides**

**V06DE Amino acids/carbohydrates/minerals/vitamins, combinations**

**V06DF Milk substitutes**

This group comprises milk substitutes used in milk allergy.

**V06DX Other combinations of nutrients**

**V07 ALL OTHER NON-THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS**

V07A ALL OTHER NON-THERAPEUTIC PRODUCTS

This group comprises e.g. solvents, diluents and solutions for blood transfusion products. Auxiliary products for performing medical examinations, e.g. plain exploration creams and lubricants, are also classified in this group.

**V07AA Plasters**

Non-medicated adhesive plasters, surgical tapes etc. are classified in this group whereas liquid plasters are classified in D02AD.

Medicated dressings are classified in D09.

**V07AB Solvents and diluting agents, incl. irrigating solutions**

This group comprises sterile water preparations and solvents for diluting or dissolving active substances, e.g. allergen extracts.

Storage solutions for the preservation of organs are also classified here.

**V07AC Blood transfusion, auxiliary products**

Citric acid/citrate/dextrose (ACD) solutions and similar products are classified in this group.

**V07AD Blood tests, auxiliary products**

Solutions used as diluents or transport media for blood samples are classified in this group.

**V07AN** *Incontinence equipment*

**V07AR** *Sensitivity tests, discs and tablets*

E.g. antibiotic discs may be classified in this group.

**V07AS** *Stomi equipment*

**V07AT** *Cosmetics*

**V07AV** *Technical disinfectants*

**V07AX** *Washing agents etc.*

**V07AY** *Other non-therapeutic auxiliary products*

Exploration creams and lubricants are classified in this group. Creams, which contain antiseptics, are classified in D08 - *Antiseptics and disinfectants*.

Preparations used as negative contrast media in double-contrast radiography only, containing e.g. bicarbonates or hypromellose, are classified in this group.

**V07AZ** *Chemicals and reagents for analysis*

**V08** **CONTRAST MEDIA**

This group comprises X-ray, MRI and Ultrasound contrast media. The X-ray contrast media are subdivided into iodinated and non-iodinated compounds, and are further classified according to water solubility, osmolarity and nephrotropic/hepatotropic properties. High osmolar substances correspond mainly to ionic substances, except from ioxaglic acid, which is classified together with the non-ionic substances. MRI contrast media are subdivided according to magnetic properties.

V08A X-RAY CONTRAST MEDIA, IODINATED

**V08AA** *Watersoluble, nephrotropic, high osmolar X-ray contrast media*

**V08AB** *Watersoluble, nephrotropic, low osmolar X-ray contrast media*

**V08AC** *Watersoluble, hepatotropic X-ray contrast media*

**V08AD** *Non-watersoluble X-ray contrast media*

V08B X-RAY CONTRAST MEDIA, NON-IODINATED

**V08BA** *Barium sulfate containing X-ray contrast media*

V08C MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING CONTRAST MEDIA

**V08CA** *Paramagnetic contrast media*

**V08CB** *Superparamagnetic contrast media*

**V08CX** *Other magnetic resonance imaging contrast media*

V08D ULTRASOUND CONTRAST MEDIA

**V08DA** *Ultrasound contrast media*

The microspheres may contain various ingredients. E.g. perflutren suspension in microspheres of phospholipids is classified in V08DA04.

Perflenapent covers structural isomers of dodecafluoropentane i.e. perflisopent.

**V09** **DIAGNOSTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS**

An expert group has been responsible for the ATC classification of radiopharmaceuticals in V09 and V10. The group has also prepared the guidelines for classification of these products.

Radiopharmaceuticals for diagnostic use are classified in this group, while radiopharmaceuticals for therapeutic use are classified in V10. In general, the 3rd level are subdivided according to site of action or organ system, the 4th level according to radionuclide and the 5th level specifies the chemical substance. The ATC 5th level defines the actual form essential in nuclear medicine procedures, which includes radionuclide and carrier molecule. Therefore, products on the market, that can often be regarded as intermediate products rather than ready-to-use radiopharmaceuticals, can be given more than one (5th level) ATC code, e.g. technetium ( $^{99m}\text{Tc}$ ) exametazime (V09AA01) and technetium ( $^{99m}\text{Tc}$ ) exametazime labelled cells (V09HA02).

ATC codes are not assigned for radionuclide precursors which are used only in the radiolabelling of another substance prior to administration.

No DDDs have been assigned for radiopharmaceuticals.

V09A CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

This group comprises preparations used in CNS investigations in diagnostic nuclear medicine.

**V09AA** *Technetium ( $^{99m}\text{Tc}$ ) compounds*

**V09AB** *Iodine ( $^{123}\text{I}$ ) compounds*

**V09AX** *Other central nervous system diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*

V09B SKELETON

This group comprises preparations used in bone imaging. Radiopharmaceuticals used for the investigation of bone marrow are classified in V09D - *Hepatic and reticulo endothelial system*.

**V09BA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

This group comprises various technetium bisphosphonates and pyrophosphate.

V09C RENAL SYSTEM

This group comprises preparations used for the visualisation of kidneys and urinary tract and preparations for functional studies of the renal system.

**V09CA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

This group comprises technetium compounds given intravenously.

Technetium compounds used in aerosols for inhalation are classified in V09E - *Respiratory system*.

Technetium-succimer prepared as 'pentavalent' is classified in V09I - *Tumour detection*.

**V09CX *Other renal system diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals***

V09D HEPATIC AND RETICULO ENDOTHELIAL SYSTEM

This group comprises radiopharmaceuticals used for the imaging of liver, gall bladder, lymphatic system and bone marrow.

**V09DA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

This group contains technetium iminodiacetic acid derivatives for cholescintigraphy.

**V09DB *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc), particles and colloids***

This group contains technetium colloidal and particle containing preparations for the scintigraphy of liver, spleen, lymphatic system and bone marrow. Also orally administered preparations used for gastrointestinal tract imaging (gastric emptying, reflux etc.) are classified in this group.

Preparations containing larger particles that are used for lung perfusion studies are classified in V09E - *Respiratory system*. Denatured labelled erythrocytes for spleen scintigraphy are classified in V09G - *Cardiovascular system*.

**V09DX** *Other hepatic and reticulo endothelial system diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*

V09E RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

This group comprises radiopharmaceuticals for the lung ventilation and lung perfusion studies.

**V09EA** *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc), inhalants*

Technetium preparations for inhalation are classified in this group. Preparations with other indications when given intravenously are classified according to such indications, e.g. technetium-pentetate is classified in V09C - *Renal system*.

**V09EB** *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc), particles for injection*

Preparations containing smaller particles or colloids that are used for RES function are classified in V09D - *Hepatic and reticulo endothelial system*.

**V09EX** *Other respiratory system diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*

V09F THYROID

This group comprises radiopharmaceuticals used for thyroid imaging. Thalliumchloride and technetium-sestamibi used for parathyroid imaging are classified in V09G - *Cardiovascular system*.

**V09FX** *Various thyroid diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*

Technetium-pertechnetate used for the scintigraphy of salivary glands and Meckels diverticulum is classified in this group. Technetium-pentavalent succimer used in medullary thyroid carcinoma is classified in V09I - *Tumour detection*. Sodium iodide (<sup>131</sup>I) in low dose is classified here. Sodium iodide (<sup>131</sup>I) in high dose for therapy is classified in V10X - *Other therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals*.

V09G CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

This group comprises radiopharmaceuticals for myocardial scintigraphy, ejection fraction measurements, and vascular disorders.

**V09GA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

Labelled cells (erythrocytes) for the investigation of cardiovascular function are classified in this group. No subdivision is made for in vitro or in vivo labelling. Pertechnetate for thyroid imaging is classified in V09F - *Thyroid*.

**V09GB *Iodine (<sup>125</sup>I) compounds***

**V09GX *Other cardiovascular system diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals***

**V09H INFLAMMATION AND INFECTION DETECTION**

This group comprises agents for the detection of inflammation and infection. Labelled blood cells are classified in this group. Agents that are used for the labelling of these cells can also be classified elsewhere, e.g. technetium-exametazime is classified in V09A - *Central Nervous System*. No subdivision is made for the type of labelled cells (erythrocytes, granulocytes or autologous etc.).

**V09HA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

**V09HB *Indium (<sup>111</sup>In) compounds***

**V09HX *Other diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals for inflammation and infection detection***

**V09I TUMOUR DETECTION**

This group comprises monoclonal antibodies and other compounds used for tumour detection.

**V09IA *Technetium (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) compounds***

**V09IB *Indium (<sup>111</sup>In) compounds***

**V09IX *Other diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals for tumour detection***

Gallium-citrate used for non-specific tumour localisation is classified in V09H - *Inflammation and infection detection*. Thallium-chloride used for tumour detection is classified in V09G - *Cardiovascular system*. Iobenguane (<sup>131</sup>I) in low dose is classified here while high dose for therapy is classified in V10X - *Other therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals*.

V09X OTHER DIAGNOSTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS

This group contains various diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**V09XA Iodine (<sup>131</sup>I) compounds**

**V09XX Various diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals**

V10 THERAPEUTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS

Radiopharmaceuticals for therapeutic use are classified in this group, while radiopharmaceuticals for diagnostic use are classified in V09 - *Diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals*. Radiopharmaceuticals for cancer treatment are classified in V10X.

See comments to V09.

V10A ANTIINFLAMMATORY AGENTS

This group comprises radiopharmaceuticals for the therapy of inflammatory processes.

**V10AA Yttrium (<sup>90</sup>Y) compounds**

In this group yttrium colloidal preparations used for radiation synovectomy are classified.

**V10AX Other antiinflammatory therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals**

This group comprises non-yttrium particulate radiopharmaceuticals for radiation synovectomy and intracavitary instillation.

V10B PAIN PALLIATION (BONE SEEKING AGENTS)

This group comprises therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals used for pain palliation in bone malignancies.

**V10BX Various pain palliation radiopharmaceuticals**

V10X OTHER THERAPEUTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS

This group contains various therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals which cannot be classified in the preceding groups.

**V10XA Iodine (<sup>131</sup>I) compounds**

Sodium iodide (<sup>131</sup>I) in low dose for diagnostic nuclear medicine is classified in V09F - *Thyroid*.

Iobenguane ( $^{131}\text{I}$ ) in low dose for diagnostic nuclear medicine is classified in V09I - *Tumour detection*.

**V10XX** ***Various therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals***

Radiopharmaceuticals for cancer treatment and various therapeutic radiopharmaceuticals which cannot be classified in the preceding groups are classified here.

**V20** **SURGICAL DRESSINGS**

A detailed classification of surgical dressings is prepared and maintained by the Ministry of Defence in the UK.



## List of terms:

AC-system	Anatomical Classification developed by the EphMRA.
ATC classification	Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical classification system.
ATC herbal classification	ATC classification for herbal remedies.
ATCvet classification	ATC classification for veterinary products.
ATC levels	The ATC system is divided in 5 different levels. 1st level: 14 anatomical groups 2nd level: Pharmacological/therapeutic/ subgroup 3rd and 4th level: Chemical/pharmacological/therapeutic subgroups 5th level: Chemical substance.
Average adult dose	The dose used for the main indication which reflects the ATC code. When referred to body weight, an adult is considered to be a person of 70 kg. The DDDs are as a main rule based on the average adult dose.
BAN	British Approved Name.
5th level codes 20 and 30	5th level codes used for combined preparations containing two or more active ingredients belonging to the same 4th level.
5th level codes - 50-series	Combination products containing two or more active components not belonging to the same 4th level are classified by using 50- series.
5th level codes - 70 series	Combination products containing psycholeptic drugs, which are not classified under N05 or N06 are classified at separate 5th levels using the 70-series corresponding to the ATC-classification of the main component.
Combination products	Products containing two or more active ingredients.
DDD	Defined Daily Dose - a technical unit of measurement defined as the assumed average maintenance dose per day for a drug used for its main indication in adults.
DDDs/1000 inhabitants/day	Data presented as such provide a rough estimate of the proportion of the population within a defined area treated daily with certain drugs.
DDDs per 100 bed days	Applied when in-hospital drug use is considered. E.g. 100 DDD per 100 bed days indicates that for instance 20 persons get a certain treatment for 5 days.
DDDs per inhabitant per year	Often used for antiinfectives or other drugs normally used in short periods. E.g. 5 DDDs/inhabitant/year indicate that every inhabitant on average is treated with a 5 days course a year.

DURG	Drug Utilization Research Group.
EphMRA	European Pharmaceutical Market Research Association.
Fixed dose	DDDs based on the average use for preparations within a group without considering and comparing the strengths of the different preparations.
INN	International nonproprietary names. The preferred substance name in the ATC-system.
Intermittent dosing	In therapeutic groups e.g. hormones, where many of the preparations are administered intermittently, the dose administered is divided by the number of days in the treatment period to obtain the average daily dose.
Maintenance dose	The dose preferred when establishing the DDD. Some drugs are used in different initial doses but this is not reflected in the DDD.
“Other” group	3rd or 4th level, often named X, used for substances not clearly belonging to any existing ATC 3rd or 4th level.
PBIRG	Pharmaceutical Business Intelligence and Research Group
PDD	The Prescribed Daily Dose for a substance is determined from prescription studies, medical- or pharmacy records and patient interviews. The PDD must be related to the diagnosis on which the dosage is based.
Plain product	Products containing one active component.
U	Unit, both international as well as others.
UD	The unit dose is used when a DDD for various reasons cannot be given in amount of active ingredient.
USAN	United States Adopted Name.
WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology	The centre responsible for the development and maintenance of the ATC/DDD system.
WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring	A collaborating centre situated in Uppsala, Sweden, which receives spontaneous reports of suspected adverse reactions from national centres and carries the operational responsibilities for WHO’s programme on International Monitoring.

## WHO Drug Information

Published by WHO 4 times a year to bring issues of primary concern to drug regulators and pharmaceutical manufacturers to the attention of a wide audience of health professionals and policy-makers concerned with the rational use of drugs. Publishes the new ATC codes/DDD approved at the working group meetings. Can be ordered from: Marketing and Dissemination, World Health Organization, 1211 Geneva 27, Switzerland,

Email: [publications@who.int](mailto:publications@who.int)

## WHO International Working Group for Drug Statistics Methodology

WHO appointed experts in medicine and statistics who advise the collaborating centre in the assignment of ATC/DDD and carries out research into the use of these methodologies in drug utilization. The Working Group meets two times a year, normally March and October.

WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology  
Norwegian Institute of Public Health  
P.O. Box 222 Skøyen  
N-0213 Oslo  
Norway

Visiting address:  
Sandakerveien 24C, Bygg C, 0473 Oslo  
Tel: + 47 2107 8160  
E-mail: [whocc@fhi.no](mailto:whocc@fhi.no)

